<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>UNIT</th>
<th>GRAMMAR</th>
<th>VOCABULARY</th>
<th>EVERYDAY ENGLISH</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 1 Hello everybody! | Verb to be  
am/is/are  
I'm from London. p6  
He's a student. p9  
Possessive adjectives  
my, your, his, her p6, p8 | Countries  
Mexico, Japan p8  
Using a bilingual dictionary p10  
Everyday objects  
a key, a newspaper p10  
Plural nouns  
bags, apples p10 | Hello and goodbye  
Telephone numbers p11  
How are you?  
See you later! p11 |
| 2 Meeting people | Verb to be  
Questions and negatives  
What's her first name? p12  
She isn't married. p13  
Negatives and short answers  
No, she isn't. p13  
Possessive 's  
Patrick's daughter p14 | The family  
mother, uncle p14  
Opposite adjectives  
old – young p16  
Food and drink  
hamburger and chips  
tea, coffee p18 | In a café  
Prices p18  
Can I have … ?  
How much is … ? p19 |
| 3 The world of work | Present Simple 1  
he/she/it p20  
She works 16 hours a day. p21  
Questions and negatives  
Does he speak Spanish? He doesn't speak Spanish or French. p22 | Verbs  
help, make, serve p24  
Jobs  
A pilot flies planes. p26 | What time is it?  
It's quarter past five.  
It's just after six o'clock. p27 |
| 4 Take it easy! | Present Simple 2  
I/you/we/they  
I go to the gym.  
We don't go out on Fridays.  
Why do you like your job? p29 | Verbs  
relax, go out, play p29  
Leisure activities  
dancing, skiing p30 | Social expressions  
I'm sorry.  
Excuse me?  
Pardon? p35 |
| Stop and check 1  
Teacher's Book p154 | | |
| 5 Where do you live? | There is/are  
There's a television. p36  
How many … ?  
How many books are there? p36  
Prepositions of place  
in front of the sofa p37  
some and any  
There are some cups.  
There aren't any plates. p38  
this, that, these, those  
This is the kitchen.  
What's in these cupboards? p38 | Rooms  
living room, kitchen p36  
Things in the house  
armchair, lamp, cupboard, washing machine p36  
What's in your bag?  
bus ticket, mobile, keys p39  
Places  
cinema, pub p43 | Directions 1  
Is there a post office near here?  
Yes, it's over there. p43 |
| 6 Can you speak English? | can/can't  
She can walk now.  
We can't write. p44  
washed/were  
Where were you yesterday? p46  
could  
I could swim when I was five. p46  
was born  
She was born in England. p47 | Countries and languages  
France, French p44  
Verbs  
translate, check, laugh p45  
Words that sound the same  
I, eye, no, know p50 | On the phone  
Directory Enquiries p50  
Can I speak to Jo, please?  
I'll just get her. p51 |
| 7 Then and now | Past Simple 1  
Regular verbs  
She worked in over 50 films. p52  
Irregular verbs  
His father got a job in London. p54  
Time expressions  
last night  
yesterday morning p55 | Verbs  
earn, act, study p53  
Verbs  
get, leave, become p54  
Words that go together  
drive a car, railway station p58 | What's the date?  
the first of April p59 |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>READING</th>
<th>SPEAKING</th>
<th>LISTENING</th>
<th>WRITING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Svetlana and Tiago p9</td>
<td>Introducing yourself p7</td>
<td>The alphabet song p10</td>
<td>Introducing yourself p9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>An email from England p16</td>
<td>Talking about you p13</td>
<td>An email from England – Where is Danka? p16</td>
<td>Write about your class p16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seumas McSporran – the man with thirteen jobs! p24</td>
<td>Asking about a friend or relative p23</td>
<td>Seumas’s day p25</td>
<td>Natural writing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>My favourite season p32</td>
<td>Leisure activities p30</td>
<td>My favourite season – Where are they? p32</td>
<td>Informal letters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Living in a bubble p40</td>
<td>What’s in your picture? p37, Talking about where you live p42</td>
<td>What’s in Yoshi’s briefcase? p39, Homes around the world p42</td>
<td>Describing where you live</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Talented teenagers p48</td>
<td>A questionnaire – What can you do? p45</td>
<td>Lucia can’t cook p45</td>
<td>Formal letters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Two famous firsts – Amelia Earhart and Yuri Gagarin p56</td>
<td>The year I was born p54, When did it happen? p55</td>
<td>1984 – the year I was born p54, Where are the people? p58</td>
<td>Describing a holiday p118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UNIT</td>
<td>GRAMMAR</td>
<td>VOCABULARY</td>
<td>EVERYDAY ENGLISH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| 8 A date to remember | Past Simple 2  
  negatives – ago  
  People didn’t drive cars 100 years ago. p60  
  Time expressions – at seven o’clock, on Saturday, in 2002 p61 | Relationships — fall in love, get engaged p63  
  Spelling and silent letters: answer, thought p64  
  Phonetic symbols: /weːk/ /ˈlɪsən/ p64 | Special occasions — Thanksgiving  
  Happy Birthday! p64 |
| 9 Food you like! | Count and uncount nouns — apples, apple juice p66  
  I like … I’d like …?  
  Do you like tea? Would you like some tea? p67  
  a and some – cake, some cake p68  
  much and many – There isn’t much milk.  
  There aren’t many eggs. p68 | Food and drink — chocolate, chips, beer, apple juice p66  
  chopsticks, noodles, sardines p71 | Polite offers and requests — Could you pass the salt, please?  
  Could I have a glass of water, please?  
  Can you give me the recipe?  
  Can I see the menu? p73 |
| 10 Bigger and better! | Comparatives and superlatives — The country is cheaper than the city. p74  
  Bali Island is the most expensive resort. p76  
  have got — I’ve got a dog.  
  They haven’t got a flat. p75 | City and country adjectives — dirty, noisy  
  exciting, safe p74  
  City and country words — wood, museum p80 | Directions — round the corner  
  over the bridge p81 |
| 11 Looking good! | Present Continuous — I’m wearing blue jeans.  
  Who is smiling? p82  
  Whose is it? — Whose is the baby? p84  
  Possessive pronouns — mine, yours, hers p84 | Clothes — hat, coat, shirt p82  
  Describing people — fair hair, blue eyes p82  
  Words that rhyme — red, said, eyes, size p88  
  Phonetic symbols — vowels and diphthongs p88  
  Tongue twisters p88 | In a clothes shop — What colour are you looking for?  
  Can I try it on? p89 |
| 12 Life’s an adventure! | going to — I’m going to be a footballer. p90  
  Infinitive of purpose — I’m going to Nepal to climb Mount Everest. p92 | Verbs — sneeze, jump, fall p92  
  The weather — sunny, cloudy  
  What’s the weather like? p96 | Making suggestions — What shall we do?  
  Let’s go swimming! p97 |
| 13 Storytime | Question forms — Why …? Which …? How much …?  
  How many …? p98  
  Adjectives and adverbs — quick, quickly; good, well p100 | Describing feelings — bored, worried p101  
  At the chemist’s — suncream, shampoo, soap p105 | At the chemist’s — I’m looking for some aspirin. p105 |
| 14 Have you ever? | Present Perfect  
  ever and never — Have you ever been to Barcelona?  
  She’s never been to Paris. p106  
  yet and just — We haven’t been there yet.  
  They’ve just had a boat ride. p108  
  Present Perfect and Past Simple — Marla’s been to Berlin.  
  She went there two years ago. p107 | Past participles — eaten, made, cooked p107  
  At the airport — departure lounge, check in p113 | At the airport — check in your luggage  
  go to gate 4 p113 |

Stop and check 3 Teacher’s Book p158

13 Storytime p98

14 Have you ever? p106

Stop and check 4 Teacher’s Book p160

Tapescripts p126

Grammar Reference p137

Pairwork activities Student A p148  
Student B p150
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>READING</th>
<th>SPEAKING</th>
<th>LISTENING</th>
<th>WRITING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Three inventions p62</td>
<td>Getting information – Famous inventions p60</td>
<td>Three inventions p62</td>
<td>Writing about a friend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Did you know that? p62</td>
<td>How did you two meet? p63</td>
<td>Linking words <em>because, when, until</em> p119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Food around the world p70</td>
<td>Food you like p66</td>
<td>My favourite national food p72</td>
<td>Filling in forms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Roleplay – shopping p69</td>
<td></td>
<td>Booking a hotel p120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Meals in your country p70</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Viva la danza! – Havana / Buenos Aires / Seville p78</td>
<td>I’ve got more than you! p76</td>
<td>Comparing life in the city and country p74</td>
<td>Describing a place</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Talking about your town p78</td>
<td></td>
<td>Linking words <em>which, where</em> p121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A walk in the country/city p80</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Flying without wings</em> (Song lyrics) p86</td>
<td>Describing a person/scene p83</td>
<td>Who’s at the party? p84</td>
<td>Describing people</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Getting information – Who’s at the party? p84</td>
<td>A song – <em>Flying without wings</em> p86</td>
<td>Linking words <em>although, but</em> p122</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>My favourite things p87</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Born free p94</td>
<td>Dangerous sports p94</td>
<td>Future plans p90</td>
<td>Writing a postcard p123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Interviews p94</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>World weather p96</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A short story –</td>
<td>Childhood stories p99</td>
<td>Noises in the night p100</td>
<td>Writing a story</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We’ve never learnt to drive! p110</td>
<td>Cities you have been to p107</td>
<td>What has Ryan done? p108</td>
<td>Writing an email</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Things you have done p108</td>
<td>A honeyman in Venice p108</td>
<td>Saying thank you p125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>A song – <em>All around the world</em> p112</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Word list** p152  **Irregular verbs and Verb patterns** p158  **Phonetic symbols** p159
Hello everybody!

1. Say your names.  
   - I'm Ali.  
   - I'm Thomas.  

2. Stand up in alphabetical order and say your names.  
   - I'm Ali.  
   - I'm Birgit.  
   - I'm Thomas.  
   - I'm Zak.  

INTRODUCTIONS
am/is/are, my/your

1. Read and listen.  
   A Hello. My name’s Marco. What’s your name?  
   B Emma.  
   A Where are you from, Emma?  
   B I'm from London.

2. Listen and repeat.

GRAMMAR SPOT
name’s = name is  
what’s = what is  
I’m = I am
2 Write the conversation.

A Hello. My _______ Lisa. What's _______ name?
B Mike.
A _______ are you from, Mike?
B _______ from Boston. Where _______ you from?
A _______ _______ Boston, too!

T 1.2 Listen and check.

3 Stand up! Talk to the students in the class.

Hello! My name's _______.
What's your name? Maria.
Where are you from, Maria?
I'm from _______.

T 1.3 Listen and repeat.

4 Where are the people from? Write the countries from the box.

the USA  England  Italy

1 This is Marco.
He's from _______.

2 This is Emma.
She's from _______.

3 This is Lisa and Mike.
They're from _______.

GRAMMAR SPOT

he's = he is
she's = she is
they're = they are
Countries, his/her

5 T1.4 Listen and repeat.

<p>| | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>the USA</td>
<td>England</td>
<td>Brazil</td>
<td>Italy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>France</td>
<td>Poland</td>
<td>Japan</td>
<td>Hungary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spain</td>
<td>Russia</td>
<td></td>
<td>Germany</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6 Where are they from? Write the countries from exercise 5.

This is Danka.
1 She's from Poland.

This is Jason.
2 He's 

This is Akiko and Miho.
3 They're 

This is Rosa.
4 

This is Tiago.
5 

This is Svetlana.
6 

This is Luc and Dominique.
7 

This is Henning.
8 

This is Zoli and Kristóf.
9 

7 Ask and answer questions about the people. Use she/her and he/his.

What's her name? Danka.
What's his name? Jason.
Where's she from? Poland.
Where's he from? Australia.

8 Unit 1 • Hello everybody!
PRACTICE

Talking about you

1 Ask and answer questions with a partner about the students in your class.

2 Introduce your partner to the class.

Listening and pronunciation

3 T 1.5 Listen and tick (✓) the sentence you hear.
   1 ☐ She's from Spain.
      ☑ He's from Spain.
   2 ☐ What's her name?
      ☐ What's his name?
   3 ☐ They're from Japan.
      ☑ They're in Japan.
   4 ☐ Where's she from?
      ☐ Where's he from?
   5 ☐ He's a teacher in Italy.
      ☐ His teacher's in Italy.

Check it

4 Complete the sentences with am, is, are, his, her, or your.
   1 My name __________ Emma.
   2 Where ______ you from?
   3 I ______ from Italy.
   4 'What's ______ name?' 'My name's Danielle.'
   5 Lisa and Mike ______ from Boston.
   6 This ______ my teacher. ______ name's Richard.
   7 Where ______ he from?
   8 This is my sister. ______ name's Miho.

Reading and writing

5 T 1.6 Listen and read about Svetlana.

Svetlana

Posted: 30 August; 14:21
My name's Svetlana Mariskova and I'm a teacher. I'm 30. I'm married and I have two children. I live in a flat in Moscow. I want to learn English for my job.

6 Complete the text about Tiago.

Tiago

Posted: 2 October, 09:07
My name's Tiago Costa and I'm a student. I ______ 18. I'm not married. I have one ______ and two brothers. I ______ in a house in Fortaleza, Brazil. I ______ to learn English because it's an international ______.

7 Write about you. Then read it to the class.
VOCABULARY AND PRONUNCIATION

Everyday objects

1 **T1.8** Listen to the alphabet song. Say the alphabet as a class.

\[\text{abcdefg} \ldots xyz\]

2 Look at this extract from an English/Italian dictionary.

- **the pronunciation**
- **the word in Italian**

- **apple** /ˈæpl/ \n  *n. mela*

- **the word in English**
- **the part of speech** (n. = noun)

3 Match the words and pictures.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>a stamp</th>
<th>an apple</th>
<th>a dictionary</th>
<th>a magazine</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a bag</td>
<td>an orange</td>
<td>a newspaper</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a key</td>
<td>a camera</td>
<td>a ticket</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a watch</td>
<td>a postcard</td>
<td>a mobile</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**T1.9** Listen and repeat.

4 Ask and answer questions with a partner.

- **What's a?**  
  
  It's an apple.

- **How do you spell that?**
  
  A, double P, ...

5 Look at the words. When is it *a*? When is it *an*?

- a bag  
- a ticket  
- a mobile

- an apple  
- an orange  
- an English newspaper

6 Look at the plural words.

- two stamps  
- two apples  
- two dictionaries

Say the plurals of the other words in exercise 3.

Grammar Reference 1.4 and 1.5 p137
EVERYDAY ENGLISH
Hello and goodbye

1 Say the numbers 1–20 round the class.
2 **T 1.10** Read and listen to the telephone numbers. Read them aloud.
   682 947       six eight two — nine four seven
   07700 900318  oh' double seven double 'oh' — nine double 'oh' three one eight
   00 1 212 799 7050  double 'oh' — one — two one two — seven double nine — seven 'oh' five 'oh'
3 **T 1.11** Listen and write the numbers you hear. Practise them.
4 Ask and answer the question with other students. Write a list.

   What's your phone number?  My mobile's 07726 751180.
   My home number's 01632 77944.
   Thank you very much.

5 **T 1.12** Listen to the conversations. Write them in the correct order.

   1  I'm fine, thank you. And you?
      I'm OK, thanks.
      Hello, Lisa. It's Mike.
      Mike! How are you?
      Hello, Lisa Jefferson.

      A  __________________________
      B  __________________________
      A  __________________________
      B  __________________________
      A  __________________________

   2  Thanks, and you. See you later!
      Bye, Marco! Have a nice day!
      Great! Bye, Emma!
      Yes, at 7.00 at the cinema.

      A  __________________________
      B  __________________________
      A  __________________________
      B  __________________________
      A  __________________________

   3  Not bad, thanks. And you?
      Very well, thanks. How are the children?
      Hi, Alice! It's me, Charles.
      How are you?
      They're fine.
      Hello, 270899.

      A  __________________________
      B  __________________________
      A  __________________________
      B  __________________________
      A  __________________________

**T 1.12** Listen again and check.

Music of English

**T 1.13** In English we stress important words. Listen and repeat. Copy the stress.

   How are you?  I'm OK, thanks.
   Not bad, thanks. And you?
   Very well, thanks.
   Have a nice day.
   See you later.

6 Practise the conversations with other students. Then practise again using your name and number.
1 Count from 1–20 round the class.
2 Count in 10s from 10–100 round the class.
3 How old are you? Ask and answer in groups.

WHO IS SHE?
Questions and negatives

1 Read the information about Lisa Jefferson.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Surname</th>
<th>Jefferson</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>First name</td>
<td>Lisa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Country</td>
<td>the USA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Job</td>
<td>journalist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Address</td>
<td>89, Franklin Street, Cambridge, Boston</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phone number</td>
<td>(616) 326 1204</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Age</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Married</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 Complete the questions.
1 What's her surname? Jefferson.
2 __________ her first name? Lisa.
3 __________ she from? The USA.
4 __________ job? She's a journalist.
5 What's ________? 89, Franklin Street, Cambridge, Boston.
6 __________ phone number? (616) 326 1204.
7 How old? Twenty-six.
8 Is she? No, she isn't.

T 2.1 Listen and check.
Practise the questions and answers.
3 Lisa has a brother. Write questions about him.

Listen and complete the information.

What's his surname? Jefferson.
What's his first name? Jerald.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Surname</th>
<th>Jefferson</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>First name</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Country</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Job</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Address</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phone number</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Age</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Married</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Negatives and short answers

4 Read and listen. Then listen and repeat.

Is she English? No, she isn't.
Is she American? Yes, she is.

Ask and answer Yes/No questions about Lisa.
1 a student? a teacher? a journalist?
2 eighteen? twenty-one? twenty-six?

Ask and answer questions about Lisa's brother.
1 Peter? Daniel? Rudi?
2 a journalist? a student? an actor?
3 sixteen? thirty? twenty-eight?

GRAMMAR SPOT

1 Complete the answers to the Yes/No questions.
   Is Lisa American? Yes, she is.
   Is her surname Smith? No, it isn't.
   Are you a journalist? No, I'm not.

2 Look at the negatives.
   She isn't married. You aren't English.
   But: I'm not a teacher. I am a teacher.

Grammar Reference 2.1 p138

PRACTICE

Who is he?

1 Student A Look at this information.
Student B Look at the information on p150.
Ask and answer questions to complete the information.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Surname</th>
<th>Binchey</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>First name</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Country</td>
<td>Ireland</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Job</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Address</td>
<td>20, Model Farm Road, Cork City</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phone number</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Age</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Married</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 Ask and answer Yes/No questions about Patrick.
   1 Smith? Jefferson? Binchey?
   2 from England? from Italy? from Ireland?
   3 an actor? a teacher? an accountant?

Talking about you

3 Ask your teacher some questions.

What's your first name? Isobel.
Are you married? No, I'm not.

4 Ask two students questions to complete the form.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Country/town</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Job</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Address</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Phone number</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Age</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Married</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Tell the class about one of the students.
PATRICK'S FAMILY
Possessive 's

1 Write the words in the correct place.

brother  father  daughter  wife  aunt  grandmother  girlfriend

boyfriend  husband  son  uncle  grandfather

girlfriend  mother  sister

2 Read about Patrick Binchey and listen. Write the people's names in the correct place.

This is a photo of Patrick, his wife, and his children. His wife's name is Brenda. She's a teacher. His daughter's name is Lara. She's twenty-one and she's a nurse. His son's name is Benny. He's nineteen and he's a student. Lara's boyfriend is a nurse, too. His name is Mick.

3 Ask and answer questions about Patrick's family.

Who's Brenda?
She's Patrick's wife.

GRAMMAR SPOT
1 Look at 's.
   She's a teacher: She's = She is.
   His wife's name: His wife's name = her name
   's = possession.

2 Find other examples in the text of 's = possession and 's = is.

Grammar Reference 2.2 p138
PRACTICE

You and your family

1 Ask your teacher questions about the people in his/her family.

What's your mother's name? What's your sister's name?

2 Write the names of people in your family. Ask and answer questions with a partner.

Pierre Hélène Marie Jean-Claude Alice

Ask a partner questions about his/her family.

Who's Pierre? He's my brother.
Who's Hélène? She's my aunt. She's my mother's sister.

3 Make true sentences with the verb to be.

1 I ______ at home.
2 We ______ in class.
3 It ______ Monday today.
4 My teacher's name ______ John.
5 My mother and father ______ at work.
6 I ______ married.
7 My grandmother ______ seventy-five years old.
8 Marco and Carlo ______ my brothers.
9 We ______ in the café. We ______ in the classroom.

Check it

4 Tick (✓) the correct sentence.

1 □ I'm a doctor.
   □ I'm doctor.
2 □ I have twenty-nine years old.
   □ I am twenty-nine years old.
3 □ I no married.
   □ I'm not married.
4 □ My sister's name is Michelle.
   □ My sisters name is Michelle.
5 □ She married.
   □ She's married.
6 □ I'm an uncle.
   □ I'm a uncle.
7 □ I have two brother.
   □ I have two brothers.
8 □ Peter's the son of my sister.
   □ Peter's my sister's son.
**VOCABULARY**

**Opposites**

1. Match the adjectives with their opposites.
   - big  
   - old  
   - new  
   - lovely  
   - easy  
   - hot  
   - expensive  
   - fast  
   - horrible  
   - old  
   - small  
   - difficult  
   - cheap  
   - cold  
   - slow  
   - young

2. Write about the pictures, using the adjectives.
   1. a. It's small.  
      b. It's big.
   2. a. It's old.  
      b. It's young.
   3. a. He's old.  
      b. She's young.
   4. a. They're old.  
      b. They're young.
   5. a. It's small.  
      b. It's big.
   6. a. It's old.  
      b. It's new.
   7. a. They're old.  
      b. They're new.
   8. a. It's old.  
      b. It's new.

**READING AND LISTENING**

**An email from England**

1. **T 2.6** Danka is a student at an English language school in Brighton, England. Read and listen to her email to Jacek, her brother in Poland.

2. Match photographs 1–3 with a part of the email.

3. Correct the false (X) sentences.
   1. Danka is from Poland. ✓
   2. She's on holiday. X No, she isn't. She's at school.
   3. She's in London.
   4. The students in her class are all from Germany.
   5. It's a very big class.
   6. Becky and James are both students.
   7. The student bars are cheap.

4. Write the questions about Danka's email.
   1. Where's Danka from? Poland.
   2. ________? Japan, Brazil, Switzerland, Germany, and Italy.
   3. ________? Simon.
   4. ________? They are brother and sister.
   5. ________? James is 25 and Becky's 19.
   6. ______ Brighton ______? No, it isn't.

5. **T 2.7** Listen to three conversations. Where is Danka? Who is she with?

6. Write an email about your class.
Dear Jacek,

How are you? I'm fine. Here's an email in English. It's good practice for you and me!

I have classes in English at The Embassy Language School. I'm in a class with seven students. They're all from different countries: Japan, Brazil, Switzerland, Germany, and Italy. Our teacher's name's Simon. He's very funny and a very good teacher.

I live with an English family in a small, old house near the centre of town. Robert and Valerie have a daughter and a son. Their daughter, Becky, is 19. She's a student at Brighton University. Their son, James, is a software designer for a computer company. He's 25. They're all very friendly, but it isn't easy to understand them. They speak very fast!

Brighton isn't very big, but it's very exciting! The restaurants and nightclubs are expensive, but the student bars and cafés are cheap. It's hot now, and it's lovely to be near the sea. I'm very happy here.

Email me soon!

Love, Danka
EVERYDAY ENGLISH

In a café

1 T 2.8 Read and listen to the prices. Read them aloud.

| £1.00  | one pound |
| 50p   | fifty p   |
| £5.00  | five pounds |
| £7.50  | seven pounds |
| £10.75 | seventy-five |

2 T 2.9 Write the prices you hear. Practise saying them.

1 2 Read the menu. Match the food and pictures.

Brighton Pier Café

Menu

Chicken salad £5.50
Tuna and egg salad £5.25
Fish and chips £4.95
Hamburger and chips £4.25
Pizza £3.75
Chocolate cake £2.50
Apple pie £2.25
Ice-cream £2.00
Coffee £1.50
Tea £1.20
Mineral water £1.10
Orange juice £1.00

3 T 2.10 Listen and repeat. Then ask and answer questions with a partner.

How much is a hamburger and chips? Four pounds twenty-five.

How much is a hamburger and chips and an orange juice? Five pounds twenty-five.

18 Unit 2 • Meeting people
1 A Good morning.
B Good _______. Can I have a _______, please?
A Here you are. Anything else?
B No, thanks.
A ________, please.
B Thanks.
A Thank you.

2 A Hi. Can I help?
B Yes. Can I have a _______ salad, please?
A Anything to drink?
B Yeah. A ________, please.
A OK. Here you are.
B _______ is that?
A _______ pounds ________, please.
B Thanks.

Music of English

T 2.12 Words often link. Listen and practise the rhythm.

Can I help?
A cup of coffee, please.
a tuna and egg salad
Here you are. Anything else?
How much is that?

5 Practise the conversations with your partner. Make more conversations.
3 The world of work

Present Simple 1 – he/she/it • Questions and negatives • Jobs • What time is it?

STARTER

What are the jobs of the people in your family? Tell the class.

My father is a doctor. My mother is a … My brother …

THREE JOBS
Present Simple he/she/it

1. Listen and read about István and Pamela. What's his job? What's her job?

GRAMMAR SPOT

1. Underline all the verbs in the texts. 
   is comes

2. What is the last letter of these verbs?

Pronunciation

3. Is is pronounced /s/ or /z/?
   T 3.2 Listen and write the verbs.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>/s/</th>
<th>/z/</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>works</td>
<td>is</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Practise saying them.

2. Read the texts aloud.

István Kis

István is a music professor. He comes from Budapest in Hungary, but now he lives in the USA. He works four days a week at the University of Texas, Austin. He speaks three languages: Hungarian, English, and German. He's married to an American and has a daughter. He likes playing tennis in his free time.
3 Complete the sentences about István and Pamela.

1 István's a music professor. Pamela's ______ a ________ doctor.
2 He comes from Hungary. She ______ ________ Canada.
3 He lives in a big city, but she _______ in a ________ town.
4 He ______ four days ______ week. She ______ 16 hours a day ________.
5 He _______ three languages. She ______ to sick people on her radio.
6 He loves his job and she _______ ________ ________, too.
7 He _______ _______ daughter. She _______ married.
8 He _______ playing tennis in his free time. She never _______ free time.

T 3.3 Listen and check. Read the sentences aloud.

Pamela Green

Pamela is a doctor. She's Canadian, but now she lives in a small town near Nairobi, Kenya, in East Africa. She isn't an ordinary doctor, she's a flying doctor. Every day from 8 a.m. to 10 a.m. she speaks to people on her radio, then she flies to help them. She works 16 hours a day non-stop, but she loves her job. She isn't married. She has no free time.

PRACTICE

Talking about people

1 Read the information about Fernando.

Fernando Diaz

Job: tourist guide
Country: Peru
Town: Lima
Place of work: in a tourist office
Languages: Spanish, English, and a little German
Married: no
Family: a dog (!)
Free time: walking his dog, playing football

2 Talk about Fernando.

Fernando's a tourist guide.
He comes from ... and he ... Lima.
He works ...
He speaks ...
He isn't ...
He has a ...
He likes ...

3 Write about a friend or a relative. Talk to a partner about him/her.

My friend Anna is a student. She lives in ...
WHAT DOES HE DO?
Questions and negatives

1 Read and listen. Complete the answers. Practise the questions and answers.

1 Where does István come from?
   Budapest, _________ Hungary.
2 What does he do?
   He’s _________ music professor.
3 Does he speak German?
   _________, he does.
4 Does he speak Spanish?
   _________, he doesn’t. He doesn’t speak Spanish or French.

GRAMMAR SPOT
1 What does he/she do? = What’s his/her job?
2 Complete these sentences with the correct form of come.
   Positive He _________ from Hungary.
   Negative He _________ from Poland.
   Question Where _________ he _________ from?

Pronunciation
3 Listen. Notice the pronunciation of does and doesn’t.
   /dɔz/ Does he speak German?
   /dɑz/ Yes, he does. /'dɑznt/ No, he doesn’t.
   Practise saying the question and short answers.

Complete the questions and answers.

1 Where _________ Pamela _________ from?
   Canada.
2 What _________ she _________?
   She’s a doctor.
3 _________ she live in Canada?
   No, she _________.
4 _________ she _________ her job?
   Yes, she _________.

T 3.6 Listen, check and practise.

3 Write similar questions about Fernando the tourist guide. Ask and answer with a partner.

Where does Fernando come from?
   Peru.

PRACTICE

Asking about people

1 Read the information about Iman or Giorgio.
2 Talk to a partner.

Iman

Job model and businesswoman
Country Somalia
Town New York
Place of work in her office in New York
Languages English, Somali, Italian, Arabic, and French
Family married to the singer David Bowie, two daughters
Free time likes cooking vegetarian food
3 Write questions about Iman or Giorgio.
   • What/where? What does Iman do?
   • Where/come from?
   • Where/live?
   • Where/work?
   • ... speak French? Does she/he ... 
   • How many children ... ?
   • ... a dog?
   • What ... in her/his free time?
   • ... like cooking?

4 Ask and answer questions with your partner.

5 Now ask your partner the same questions about a friend or relative.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Giorgio Locatelli</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Job</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Country</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Town</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Place of work</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Languages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Family</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Free time</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Listening and pronunciation

6 T 3.7 Listen to the sentences about Iman and Giorgio. Correct the wrong sentences.

- Iman comes from Somalia. Yes, that's right.
- Iman lives and works in Somalia. No, she doesn't. She lives and works in New York.

7 T 3.8 Tick (✓) the sentence you hear.

1. □ He likes his job.
   □ She likes her job.
2. □ She loves walking.
   □ She loves working.
3. □ He's married.
   □ He isn't married.
4. □ Does she have three children?
   □ Does he have three children?
5. □ What does he do?
   □ Where does he go?

Check it

8 Tick (✓) the correct sentence.

1. □ She comes from Somalia.
   □ She come from Somalia.
2. □ What he do in his free time?
   □ What does he do in his free time?
3. □ Where lives she?
   □ Where does she live?
4. □ He isn't married.
   □ He doesn't married.
5. □ Does she has two sons?
   □ Does she have two sons?
6. □ He doesn't play football.
   □ He no plays football.
7. □ She doesn't love Peter.
   □ She doesn't loves Peter.
8. □ What's he's address?
   □ What's his address?
READING AND LISTENING
Seumas McSporran – the man with thirteen jobs!

1 Seumas McSporran /ˈseɪms məkˈspɔrən/ comes from Scotland. (This is his real name!) Look at the photographs of some of the things he does every day.

2 Match a sentence with a photograph.
   1 □ He helps in the shop.
   2 □ He makes breakfast for the hotel guests.
   3 □ He serves petrol.
   4 □ He delivers the beer to the pub.
   5 □ He collects the post from the boat.
   6 □ He drives the children to school.
   7 □ He delivers the letters.
   8 □ He has a glass of wine.
   9 □ He works as an undertaker.

3 Read about Seumas. Answer the questions.
   1 Where does Seumas live?
   2 How old is he?
   3 How many jobs does he have?
   4 What’s his wife’s name?
   5 What does she do?
   6 How many people live on Gigha?
   7 How many tourists visit Gigha in summer?
   8 What does Seumas do in the morning?
   9 What do he and Margaret do in the evening?

4 Look at the photos. Ask and answer questions with a partner about times in Seumas’s day.

What does he do at six o’clock?
He gets up and makes breakfast.
**SEUMAS McSPORRAN** is a very busy man. He is 60 years old and he has thirteen jobs.

He is a postman, a policeman, a fireman, a taxi driver, a school-bus driver, a boatman, an ambulance man, an accountant, a petrol attendant, a barman, and an undertaker. Also, he and his wife, Margaret, have a shop and a small hotel.

Seumas lives and works on the island of Gigha in the west of Scotland. Only 120 people live on Gigha, but in summer 150 tourists come by boat every day.

Every weekday Seumas gets up at 6.00 and makes breakfast for the hotel guests. At 8.00 he drives the island’s children to school. At 9.00 he collects the post from the boat and delivers it to all the houses on the island. He also delivers the beer to the island’s only pub. Then he helps Margaret in the shop.

He says: ‘Margaret likes being busy, too. We never have holidays and we don’t like watching television. In the evenings Margaret makes supper and I do the accounts. At 10.00 we have a glass of wine and then we go to bed. Perhaps our life isn’t very exciting, but we like it.’

---

5 **T3.9** Listen to four conversations from Seumas’s day. After each one answer these questions.

1. Is it morning, afternoon, or evening?
2. Who are the people? Where are they?
3. What is Seumas’s job?

6 Complete the conversations.

1. **A** Good _________. Can I _________ two ice-creams, please?
   **B** Chocolate or vanilla?
   **A** One chocolate, one vanilla, please.
   **B** That’s _________. Anything _________?
   **A** No, thank you.

2. **A** Only ________ letters for you this _________, Mrs Craig.
   **B** Thank you very much, Mr McSporran. And _________ Mrs McSporran this _______
   **A** Oh, she’s very well, thank you. She’s _________ in the shop.

3. **A** A glass of _________ before bed, my dear?
   **B** Oh, yes please.
   **A** _________ you are.
   **B** Thank you, my dear. I’m very _________ this _________.

4. **A** Hello, Mr McSporran!
   **B** Good _________, boys and girls. Hurry up, we’re late.
   **A** Can I sit here, Mr McSporran?
   **C** No, no, I _________ to sit there.
   **B** Be quiet _________ of you, and SIT DOWN!

Practise the conversations with your partner.
VOCABULARY AND PRONUNCIATION

Jobs

1. Use your dictionary and match a picture with a job in column A.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A</th>
<th>B</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a A pilot</td>
<td>designs buildings.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b A chef</td>
<td>wears beautiful clothes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c A nurse</td>
<td>looks after people in hospital.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d A lawyer</td>
<td>makes films.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e An actor</td>
<td>writes for a newspaper.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f A journalist</td>
<td>cooks in a restaurant.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>g A model</td>
<td>sells things.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>h An architect</td>
<td>flies planes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i A shop assistant</td>
<td>helps people in court.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Match a job in A with a line in B.

T 3.10 Listen and check.

3. Look at the phonetic spelling of some of the words. Practise saying them.

1 /nəːs/ 4 /dʒep əˈsɪstənt/ 2 /ˈmɒdəl/ 5 /ˈæːkta(r)/ 3 /ˈəkta(r)/ 6 /ʃɛf/

T 3.11 Listen and repeat.


What does a pilot do? 
He/She flies planes.

Phonetic symbols p159
EVERYDAY ENGLISH

What time is it?

1 Look at the clocks. Write the times.

It's five o'clock.

It's half past five.

It's quarter past five.

It's quarter to six.

It's five past five.

It's twenty past five.

It's twenty-five to six.

It's ten to six.

2 Look at the times.

It's just before three o'clock.

It's just after five o'clock.

What time is it now? What time does the lesson end?

Music of English

T 3.13 In English the voice goes up and down. Copy the stress and intonation.

Conversation 1

Excuse me. Can you tell me the time, please?

Yes, of course. It's just after six o'clock.

Thanks.

Conversation 2

Excuse me. Can you tell me the time, please?

I'm sorry, I don't know. I don't have a watch.

Never mind.

3 With a partner, draw clocks on a piece of paper. Make more conversations.
WEEKDAYS AND WEEKENDS
Present Simple /you/we/they

1 T 4.1 Listen and read about Ceri Bevan.
What's her job? What does she do at weekends?
2 Complete the text with the verbs.

trains works is plays x2 lives doesn't relax has loves

'I work hard and I play hard, too!'
says Ceri Bevan

Ceri _______ 28 years old and _______ in Cardiff, Wales. She _______ hard as a lawyer from Monday to Friday, but she _______ at weekends. She _______ rugby for the Women's Welsh Rugby team. On Saturdays she _______ with her team at the Rugby Club, and on Sundays she _______ in a match. She _______ no free time, but she _______ her job and playing rugby.
3 T 4.2 Close your books and listen to Ceri. Does she have a busy life? Give examples.

'I love my job!'

I love my job as a family lawyer, because I like helping people. But I like playing rugby, too, so my life is very busy! Every lunchtime I go to the park near my office. On Monday and Thursday evenings I go to the swimming pool with my boyfriend Alex.

On Tuesday and Friday mornings I work at 5.30 and go to the gym before work. And on Wednesday evenings I play with my team at the club.

On Friday evenings I just relax because I'm usually very tired! I sometimes cook my sister. She cooks in the centre of Cardiff, too. Or I go to a nice dinner at home with Alex. We cook cooking. After dinner we often watch a DVD.

We never go out on Saturday evenings, because I always want in a match on Sundays. I train our team to win the next World Cup!'
Talking about you

1 Make questions. Then match the questions and answers.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Questions</th>
<th>Answers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 What time</td>
<td>a My mother and sisters.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Where</td>
<td>b To Spain or Portugal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 What</td>
<td>c After dinner.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 When</td>
<td>d I always relax.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 Who</td>
<td>e At 11 o'clock.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 Why</td>
<td>f Because it's interesting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 How</td>
<td>g By bus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 Do</td>
<td>h Yes, I do sometimes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do you like your job?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do you travel to school?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do you go on holiday?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do you go to bed?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do you go out on Friday evenings?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do you live with?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do you do on Sundays?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do you do your homework?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**T 4.4** Listen and check.

2 Ask and answer the questions with a partner. Give true answers.

3 Tell the class about you and your partner.

Listening and pronunciation

**T 4.5** Tick (✓) the sentence you hear.

1 □ What does he do on Sundays?
□ What does she do on Sundays?
2 □ Do you stay at home on Tuesday evenings?
□ Do you stay at home on Thursday evenings?
3 □ He lives here.
□ He leaves here.
4 □ Where do you go on Saturday evenings?
□ What do you do on Saturday evenings?
5 □ I read a lot.
□ I eat a lot.
6 □ Why do you like your job?
□ Why don’t you like your job?

Positives and negatives

5 Make the sentences opposite.

1 She’s French. **She isn’t French.**
2 I don’t like cooking. **I like cooking.**
3 She doesn’t speak Spanish.
4 They want to learn English.
5 We’re tired and want to go to bed.
6 Roberto likes watching football on TV, but he doesn’t like playing it.
7 I work at home because I have a computer.
8 Amelia isn’t happy because she doesn’t have a new car.
9 I smoke, I drink, and I don’t go to bed early.
10 He doesn’t smoke, he doesn’t drink, and he goes to bed early.
2 Discuss in groups what you think your teacher likes doing. Choose five activities.

I think he/she likes cooking. **No, I think he/she likes eating in restaurants.**

Ask your teacher questions to find out who is correct.

Do you like cooking? Do you like eating in restaurants?

3 Tell the other students what you *like* doing and what you *don't like* doing from the list. Ask questions about the activities.

I don't like watching TV, but I like *reading* very much. **Oh, really? What do you read?**

Why don't you like watching TV?

4 Tell the other students things you like doing which are *not* on the list.
READING AND LISTENING

My favourite season

1. What season is it now? What are the seasons?
2. What month is it now? Say the months of the year.
3. When are the different seasons in your country?

2. Look at the photos. Which season is it? What colours do you see?

3. **T 4.6** Read and listen to three people from different countries.

4. Answer the questions.
   1. What sports do they play?
   2. Do Daniella and Axel like skiing?
   3. Where do Daniella and her family eat in summer?
   4. Where does Sumalee live?
   5. Which season does Sumalee like best?
   6. What do Sumalee and her friends do in February?
   7. Does Daniella like sunbathing?
   8. Why does Axel like spring?
   9. Where do Daniella's cousins live?
  10. Which months are winter months in the three countries?

5. There are six mistakes about Daniella, Sumalee, and Axel. Correct them.

   **Daniella** comes from England. In summer she goes surfing and sailing. She loves the beach and she likes sunbathing.

   **Sumalee** comes from the south of Thailand. Her favourite season is summer. She loves dancing.

   **Axel** comes from Norway. He likes winter best. He likes skiing, but he doesn't ski very fast.

6. **T 4.7** Listen to the conversations. Is it Daniella, Sumalee, or Axel? Where are they? How do you know? Discuss with a partner.

**What do you think?**

- What is your favourite season? Why?
- What do you do in the different seasons?

**SONG Colours** Teacher's Book p139

**WRITING** Informal letters p115
Daniella from Australia

I like summer best. We cook and eat in the garden, and we often go to the beach. I don't like sunbathing, but I love water sports. I go surfing and waterskiing, and I sometimes go sailing with my dad. Summer here is from December to February, so we always spend Christmas day on the beach. My cousins in England think this is very funny. They think it's always warm and sunny here in Australia, but in July and August it's sometimes cold and wet.

Sumalee from Thailand

I live in Chiang Mai in the north. We don't have four seasons, we have three – hot, rainy, and cool. I like the cool season from November to February. It's our 'winter'. It's quite hot in the daytime and it's cold at night. In February we have lots of tropical flowers – red, orange, and pink. So every year we have a beautiful Flower Festival. We sing and dance – I love it!

Axel from Norway

Here's a joke about my country: 'Winter is nine months long, and the other three months are good for skiing.' It isn't true! Here the winter months are December to February but it is often cold in spring and autumn too. Our summer is short but warm, with very long days. Spring is my favourite season. It's the best time to go skiing. I love going fast down a white mountain under a beautiful, blue sky. Sometimes you can still ski in June – isn't that amazing!
**SPEAKING**

Do you have a healthy lifestyle?

1. Read and complete the questionnaire about you. Write ✓ or X, then look at the answer key. Are you healthy?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Do you ...?</th>
<th>Me</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>S1</th>
<th>S2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A go to bed early on weekdays</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B have breakfast every morning</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C drink mineral water</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D walk to school/work</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E play a sport</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F smoke</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G drink alcohol</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H like fast food</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I watch TV a lot</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>J play computer games</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**KEY**

A B C D E ✓ = 1 point x = 0 point

F G H I J x = 1 point ✓ = 0 point

7-10 points Very good!
4-6 points OK
0-3 points Oh dear!

2. Ask your teacher the questions, then ask two students. Complete the questionnaire about them.

Do you smoke?
Yes, I do/Yes, sometimes.
No, I don’t/No, never.

Do you like fast food?
Yes, I like it a lot.
No, I don’t.

3. Compare with the class. Who is healthy in the class?

**Writing**

4. Use the information in the questionnaire. Write about you and a partner.

I don’t go to bed early on weekdays, but Sofia does. We don’t eat breakfast every morning ...
EVERYDAY ENGLISH

Social expressions

1. Complete the conversations with the expressions.

1. A ________. The traffic is bad today.
   B ________. Come and sit down.
   We’re on page 25.

2. A ________.
   B Yes?
   A Do you have a dictionary?
   B ________ I don’t. It’s at home.
   A ________.

3. A It’s very hot in here. Can I open the window?
   B ________?
   A The window, can I open it?
   B ________.

4. A ________!
   B Oh, good morning Marco. Can I help you?
   A Yes, please. Can I have a ticket for the trip to York?
   B Yes, of course. It’s £80. Do you want to pay £20 deposit now?
   A Sorry. ________?
   B It means you can pay £20 now and £60 later.
   A Ah. ________. Yes, please.

T 4.8 Listen and check.

Music of English

T 4.9 Listen and practise the expressions in conversations 1–4. Pay attention to stress and intonation.

2. Practise the conversations with a partner.
STARTER

1 Write the words in the correct column.
   an armchair   a fridge   a television   a table
   a shelf   a plant   a DVD player   a dishwasher
   a sink   a lamp   a cooker   a washing machine
   a telephone   a cupboard   a sofa

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>living room</th>
<th>kitchen</th>
<th>both</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

2 What's in your living room? Tell a partner.

WHAT'S IN THE LIVING ROOM?
*There is/are, prepositions*

1 Suzie has a new flat. Describe her living room on p37.

   There's a television.
   There are two photos.

2 T 5.1 Read and listen. Complete the answers. Practise the questions and answers.
   Is there a television? Yes, there ________.
   Is there a computer? No, there ________.
   Are there any books? Yes, there ________.
   How many books are there? There ________ a lot.
   Are there any pictures? No, there ________.

GRAMMAR SPOT

Complete the table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>There</th>
<th>a television.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>some books.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Negative</td>
<td>There</td>
<td>a computer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>any pictures.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Question</td>
<td>there</td>
<td>a telephone?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>any plants?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Grammar Reference 5.1 and 5.2 p140
3 Ask and answer questions about these things in Suzie's living room.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>a cat</th>
<th>a dog</th>
<th>a DVD player</th>
<th>a fireplace</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a mirror</td>
<td>a clock</td>
<td>a coffee table</td>
<td>a rug</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plants</td>
<td>pictures</td>
<td>shelves</td>
<td>curtains</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>newspapers</td>
<td>photos</td>
<td>cushions</td>
<td>DVDs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Is there a cat? Yes, there is.

4 Describe Suzie's living room. Complete the sentences with a preposition.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>on</th>
<th>under</th>
<th>next to</th>
<th>in front of</th>
<th>behind</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. The cat is __________ the sofa __________ Suzie.
2. The DVD player is __________ the television.
3. There's a photo __________ the mirror.
4. There aren't any pictures __________ the walls.
5. There's a lamp __________ the sofa.
6. There are some magazines __________ the rug __________ the sofa.

PRACTICE

What's in your picture?

1 Work with a partner. Don't look at your partner's picture.

Student A
Look at the picture of the living room on p148. Your picture is not complete. Ask Student B questions and find out where the things go. Draw them on your picture.

Student B
Look at the picture of the living room on p150. Your picture is complete. Answer Student A's questions and help him/her complete the picture.

Where's the lamp? It's on the table.

Where exactly? Next to the book.

2 T 5.2 Look at the complete picture together on p150. Listen to someone describing it. There are five mistakes in the description. Say 'Stop!' when you hear a mistake.

Stop! There aren't three people! There are four people!
WHAT'S IN THE KITCHEN?
some/any, this/that/these/those

1 This is Suzie's kitchen. Work with a partner. Ask and answer questions about these things.

apples  a cooker  a fridge  cupboards  cups  flowers

Are there any apples? Yes, there are. Where are they? They're next to the cooker.

2 T 5.3 Listen and complete the conversation between Suzie and Matt.

Suzie And this is the kitchen.
Matt Mmm, it's very nice.
Suzie Well, it's not very big, but there ______ a ______ of cupboards. And ______ is a new fridge, and a cooker. That's new, too.
Matt But what's in all these cupboards?
Suzie Well, not a lot. There are some cups, but there aren't any plates.
Matt And I have ______ knives and forks, but I don't have ______ spoons!
Matt Do you have ______ glasses?
Suzie No. Sorry.
Matt Never mind. We can drink this champagne from those cups! Cheers!

3 What is there in your kitchen? How is your kitchen different from Suzie's?
GRAMMAR SPOT

Some and any

1 What's the difference between the sentences?
   There are two magazines.
   There are some magazines.
2 When do we say some? When do we say any?
   There are some cups.
   There aren't any glasses.
   Are there any spoons?

This, that, these, those

3 Complete the sentences with this, that, these, or those.

I like ______ champagne. ______ cooker is new.

______ flowers are lovely. Give me ______ cups.

What's in Yoshi's briefcase?

4 T 5.4 Yoshi Ishigawa is on business in New York. Listen to him describe what's in his briefcase. Tick (✓) the things in it.

- a newspaper
- a dictionary
- a notebook
- a letter
- a mobile
- keys
- a bus ticket
- stamps
- a sandwich
- photos
- an address book

5 Look in your bag. Ask and answer questions about your bags with a partner.

Is there a dictionary in your bag? Are there any stamps?

How many stamps are there?

Check it

6 Tick (✓) the correct sentence.

1 □ There aren't some sandwiches. □ There aren't any sandwiches.
2 □ Do you have some good dictionary? □ Do you have a good dictionary?
3 □ I have some photos of my dog. □ I have any photos of my dog.
4 □ I have lot of books. □ I have a lot of books.
5 □ How many students are there in this class? □ How many of students are there in this class?
6 □ Next my house there's a park. □ Next to my house there's a park.
7 □ Look at this house over there! □ Look at that house over there!
8 □ Henry, that is my mother. Mum, that is Henry. □ Henry, this is my mother. Mum, this is Henry.
READING AND SPEAKING

Living in a bubble

1 What are the names of the rooms in a house? What do we do in each room? Match the lines to make sentences.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>We cook in</th>
<th>the living room.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>We watch TV in</td>
<td>the kitchen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We sleep in</td>
<td>the study.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We eat in</td>
<td>the bedroom.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We work in</td>
<td>the dining room.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 Look at the photos. What rooms can you see?

3 Read about Cyril Jean and his house. Answer the questions.
1 Where is Cyril’s house? How old is it?
2 Why is it called ‘a bubble house’?
3 What does Cyril do?
4 What does Cyril collect?
5 How many rooms are there in his house?
6 Is there a garden?

4 Are the sentences true (✓) or false (✗)?
1 Cyril’s house is modern.
2 There aren’t any ‘bubble houses’ in the south of France.
3 There are a lot of clocks in the house.
4 The centre of the house is the kitchen.
5 Cyril doesn’t like listening to music.
6 The windows don’t have curtains.
7 There are three rooms upstairs.
8 Antti Lovag thinks the house is funny.

5 Work with a partner. Ask and answer questions about Cyril’s home.

Is there a garden? Yes, there is.
Are there any bedrooms? Yes, there’s one.

Ask about these things:
• a study   • pictures   • curtains   • clocks
• a TV      • plants     • a lot of kitchen cupboards

What do you think?
• What do you like about Cyril’s home? What don’t you like?
• Describe your perfect home.
Is this a modern house? Is this a house of the future? Well, no, it isn’t. Cyril Jean’s house in the south of France is 40 years old. There are more houses like this in the south of France. They are called ‘bubble houses,’ and you can see why!

Cyril Jean is a designer and he loves round things. He collects old records and clocks. He also collects round furniture. And now he has a completely round house for it all.

The centre of the house is one very big bubble. This is both the living room and dining room. There are round armchairs, a round table, and a big round rug in front of a round fireplace. Around the living room are three small bubbles. One bubble is a kitchen with round cupboards, another bubble is the garden room, and the third bubble is a music room for all Cyril’s old records. Upstairs there are two more bubbles – a bedroom, and a bathroom.

The doors and windows are also round, of course. The windows are like eyes. There aren’t any curtains in the house, because Cyril likes to see the garden all the time.

Bubble houses are the idea of a Hungarian architect, Antti Lovag. Lovag thinks that a lot of modern houses are bad for us, especially tall blocks of flats. He thinks that people are happy in round homes because they are more natural. Cyril agrees with this. ‘Some people think my house is funny,’ he says. ‘But for me, this is the perfect home.’
LISTENING AND SPEAKING
Homes around the world

1 Match the places and photos 1–4.
☐ Lisbon  ☐ New England  ☐ Seoul  ☐ Samoa

2 Listen to the people from these places. Complete the chart.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Candy and Bert</th>
<th>Alise</th>
<th>Kwan</th>
<th>Manola</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>House or flat?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Old or modern?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Where?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How many bedrooms?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Live(s) with?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Extra information</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3 Work with a partner. Talk about the people.

Candy and Bert live in an old, white house.
Alise lives in a house near the sea.

4 Talk about where you live.

Do you live in a house or a flat?
Where is it?
Do you have a garden?
How many rooms . . . ?
Who . . . ?

42 Unit 5 • Where do you live?

WRITING Describing where you live p116
EVERYDAY ENGLISH

Directions 1

1 Look at the street map of Suzie's town. Where can she do these things? Find the places on the map.

- buy: aspirin  
  - some bread 
  - a book  
  - milk  
  - a DVD  
  - stamps 
- send an email 
- go for a walk 
- see a film 
- have a drink 
- catch a bus

2 5.6 Listen to Suzie's conversations and complete them.

1 A _______ me! Is there a _______ near here?
   B Yes. _______ _______ Church Street. Take the first _______ _______ right. It's _______ _______ the music shop.
   A OK. Thanks.

2 A Is there a post office near here?
   B Go straight ahead, and it's _______ _______ left, _______ _______ the pub.
   A Thanks a lot.

3 A Excuse me! Is there a _______ near here?
   B There's an Internet café in Park Lane _______ _______ the bank, and there's an Italian restaurant in Church Street next to the _______.
   A Is that one _______?
   B No. Just two minutes, that's all.

Music of English 🎵

T 5.7 Listen and repeat. Copy the stress and intonation.

Excuse me! Is there a chemist's near here? Yes, it's over there.

Excuse me! Is there a baker's near here? Yes, it's on the corner.

3 Practise the conversations in exercise 2 with a partner.

4 Make more conversations with your partner. Use the expressions in the box to ask and answer about the places.

- near here  
  - over there  
  - on the corner  
  - on the right/left  
  - straight ahead

- a bookshop  
- a cinema  
- a bank  
- a supermarket  
- the railway station  
- a car park  
- a bus stop  
- a park  
- a swimming pool  
- a church  
- a pub  
- a travel agent's

5 Talk about where you are. Is there a chemist's near here? Is it far? What about a bank/a post office/a supermarket?
WHAT CAN YOU DO?
can/can’t

1 Match the photos of the Brady family with the sentences.

1 ☐ She can walk now.
2 ☐ We can draw, but we can’t write.
3 ☐ I can sing quite well.
4 ☐ ‘Can you play the drums?’
   ‘Yes, I can.’ ‘No, he can’t!’
5 ☐ ‘Can they dance?’
   ‘Yes, they can. My dad’s OK, and my mum can dance flamenco really well.’

T 6.1 Listen and check.

GRAMMAR SPOT

1 Say all persons of can and can’t.
   What do you notice?
   I can, you can, he . . . she . . . it . . . we . . . they . . .
   I can’t, you . . . , etc.

Pronunciation

2 T 6.2 Listen and repeat these sentences.
   I can speak French.
   Can you speak French?
   = /kæn/
   Yes, I can.
   = /kæn/
   No, I can’t.
   = /kænt/
PRACTICE

Lucía can’t cook. Can you?

1 T 6.4 Listen to Lucía and complete the chart. Put ✓ or ✗.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Can . . .?</th>
<th>Lucía</th>
<th>You</th>
<th>Partner</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>drive a car</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>speak French</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>speak Spanish</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cook</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>play tennis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ski</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>swim</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>play the guitar</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dance</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>use a computer</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 Complete the chart about you.

3 Complete the chart about your partner. Ask and answer the questions.

Tell the class about you and your partner.

What can computers do?

4 What can computers do? Discuss with a partner.

Can they . . .?

- translate
- check spellings
- write poetry
- feel ill
- speak English
- make music
- laugh
- think
- play chess
- have conversations
- hear
- fall in love

Imagine you live in 2050. What can/can’t a computer do?
WHERE WERE YOU YESTERDAY?
was/were, can/could

T 6.5 Read and listen to the questions. Complete the answers.

Present
1 What day is it today?
   It's ________.
2 What month is it now?
   It's ________.
3 Where are you now?
   I'm in/at ________.
4 Are you in England?
   ________, I am. ________, I'm not.
5 Can you swim?
   ________, I can. ________, I can't.
6 Can your teacher speak three languages?
   Yes, ________ can. No, ________ can't.

Past
What day was it yesterday?
   It was ________.
What month was it last month?
   It was ________.
Where were you yesterday?
   I was in/at ________.
Were you in England in 1999?
   ________, I was. ________, I wasn't.
Could you swim when you were five?
   ________, I could. ________, I couldn't.
Could your teacher speak English when he/she was seven?
   Yes, ________ could. No, ________ couldn't.

GRAMMAR SPOT
1 Complete the table with the past of to be.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Negative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>was</td>
<td>wasn't</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You</td>
<td>were</td>
<td>weren't</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He/She/It</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Pronunciation
2 T 6.6 Listen and repeat.
   It was /waz/ Monday yesterday. We were /wa/ at school.
   In short answers the pronunciation is different.
   Was /waz/ it hot? Yes, it was /waz/.
   Were /wa/ you tired? but Yes, we were /wa:/.

3 What is the past of can?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Negative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I/You/He/She/It/We/They</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Grammar Reference 6.1 and 6.2 p141
Talking about you

1. Ask and answer questions with a partner.

   Where were you . . . ?
   • at eight o’clock this morning
   • at half past six yesterday evening
   • at two o’clock this morning
   • at this time yesterday
   • at ten o’clock last night
   • last Saturday evening

2. Complete Emma and Marco’s conversation, using was, were, wasn’t, weren’t, or couldn’t.

E _______ you at Charlotte’s party last Saturday?
M Yes, I _______.
E _______ it good?
M Well, it _______ OK.
E _______ there many people?
M Yes, there _______.
E _______ Pascal there?
M No, he _______. And where _______ you there? Why _______ you there?
E Oh . . . I _______ go because I _______ at Sergio’s party! It _______ brilliant!
M Oh!

Four geniuses!

3. What are these people famous for? Discuss with a partner.

Salvador Dalí
Charlotte Brontë
Tiger Woods
Albert Einstein

4. Look at these sentences.

   I was born in London in 1983. I could read when I was four.
   My sister couldn’t read until she was seven.

Match lines in A, B, and C and make similar sentences about the four geniuses.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A</th>
<th>B</th>
<th>C</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Salvador Dalí</td>
<td>the USA / 1975</td>
<td>play golf / three</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Charlotte Brontë</td>
<td>Germany / 1879</td>
<td>paint / one</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tiger Woods</td>
<td>England / 1816</td>
<td>write stories / four</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Albert Einstein</td>
<td>Spain / 1904</td>
<td>couldn’t speak / eight</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5. Ask and answer questions with a partner about the geniuses.

   When was Salvador Dalí born?
   Where was he born?
   How old was he when he could . . . ?

6. Work in groups. Ask and answer the questions.

1. Where were you born?
2. When were you born?
3. How old were you when you could . . . ?

   • walk
   • talk
   • read
   • swim
   • ride a bike
   • use a computer
   • speak a foreign language

Check it

7. Tick (✓) the correct sentence.

1. I don’t can use a computer.
2. I can’t use a computer.
5. Was they at the party?
6. Were they at the party?
2. I can speak English very well.
3. I can speak English very well.
6. She was no at home.
3. I’m sorry. I can’t go to the party.
4. He could play chess when he was five.
6. She wasn’t at home.
4. He can play chess when he was five.

T 6.7 Listen and check. Listen for the pronunciation of was and were. Practise with a partner.
READING AND SPEAKING

Talented teenagers

1 Do you like singing? Can you sing well? Do you like reading? What do you read? Look at the teenagers in the photographs. What can they do?

2 Work in two groups.
   **Group A** Read about the singer.
   **Group B** Read about the writer.

3 Answer the questions about Joss or Christopher.
   1 How old is she/he?
   2 What can she/he do?
   3 Where was she/he born?
   4 Where does she/he live?
   5 Who does she/he live with?
   6 Does she/he go to school?
   7 What could or couldn’t she/he do when she/he was very young?
   8 Why were her/his parents surprised?
   9 Where was she/he last month?
  10 Why was she/he there?

4 Find a partner from the other group. Tell your partner about your teenager, using your answers.

5 What is the same about Joss and Christopher? What is different? Discuss with your partner.

**Roleplay**

6 Work with a partner.
   **Student A** is a journalist.
   **Student B** is Joss or Christopher.

Ask and answer questions, using the questions in exercise 3 to help you.

---

**Joss**

Joss was born in Devon in the south of England. She lives with her family in a small village in the English countryside. But she also works in New York. She sings at the Beacon Theatre on Broadway. She is a shy seventeen-year-old with a fantastic voice.

Joss could sing very well when she was a little girl. Her parents couldn’t believe it. She says ‘No-one in our family can sing – only me. My mum can’t sing a note!’ Later, at school, her friends couldn’t understand soul music. ‘I love it, but they don’t. They prefer pop music.’

Last month she was in New York to make a record. ‘I was worried about it. But people like it, so I’m very happy at the moment.’
THE FANTASY WRITER

CAN A FIFTEEN-YEAR-OLD WRITE A BESTSELLER?
CAN A TEENAGER’S BOOK SELL MORE THAN HARRY POTTER?
CHRISTOPHER PAOLINI’S ANSWER IS YES.

Christopher was born in Montana, USA. He lives with his family in Paradise Valley. They have a small house by the river. His parents teach him and his sister at home, they don’t go to school. Christopher loves language and he loves books. Every day he sits for hours at his computer, he just can’t stop writing.

This is surprising because when Christopher was very young he couldn’t read very well. Then one day – ‘It was magic,’ he says, ‘I could read, I could see the characters.’ Suddenly there were people, conversations and stories in his head. His first book was a fantasy called Eragon. His parents were surprised that it was so good.

Last month Christopher was in New York for interviews. Why? Because Eragon was number one in the bestseller lists!
VOCABULARY AND PRONUNCIATION

Words that sound the same

1 Look at the sentences. What do you notice about these words?
   - I write with my right hand.
   - I have a black eye.
   - No, he doesn’t know the answer.

2 Find the words in B that have the same pronunciation as the words in A.
   
   **A** hear write wear see eye
   there by for hour four
   know son too
   sea where buy here
   right no two their **B**

3 Correct the two spelling mistakes in each sentence.
   - hear
   - see

   1 I can hear you, but I can’t see you.
   2 Their are three bedrooms in hour house.
   3 I don’t no wear Jill lives.
   4 My sun lives near the see.
   5 Don’t where that hat, by a new one!
   6 Know, eye can’t come to your party.
   7 You were write. Sally can’t come four dinner.
   8 There daughter could right when she was three.
   9 I no my answers are write.

4 Listen and repeat.

   **T 6.8** Listen to the operator. Answer her questions to get Lisa’s telephone number.

   - Operator: International Directory Enquiries. Which country, please?
   - You: **The USA**
   - Operator: And which town?
   - You: **_______**
   - Operator: Can I have the last name, please?
   - You: **_______**
   - Operator: And the initial?
   - You: **_______**
   - Operator: What’s the address?
   - You: ____________________________.

   **Recorded message** The number you require is **_______**.

   **T 6.9** Listen to the operator. Answer her questions to get Lisa’s telephone number.

   **Roleplay**

2 Work with a partner. Take it in turns to be the operator. Make conversations to find out the telephone numbers of Yoshi and Fernando.

   **Student A** Go to p148.  **Student B** Go to p150.
3 Complete conversations 1–3 with these lines. Check answers with a partner.
1 Can I take a message?
2 Great! I’ll see you on Sunday at ten, then. Bye!
3 This is Jo.
4 Oh, never mind. Perhaps next time. Bye!
5 There’s a party at my house on Saturday. Can you come?
6 No, it isn’t. I’ll just get her.
7 I’ll ring back later.
8 Can I speak to the manager, please?

1 A Hello.
   B Hello. Can I speak to Jo, please?
   A ____________________________________________.
   B Oh! Hi, Jo. This is Nicola. Is Sunday still OK for tennis?
   A Yes, that’s fine.
   B ____________________________________________!
   A Bye!

2 A Hello.
   B Hello. Is that Emma?
   A ____________________________________________.
   …
   C Hello, Emma here.
   B Hi, Emma. It’s Marco. Listen!
   C ____________________________________________?
   B Oh sorry, Marco. I can’t. It’s my sister’s wedding.
   C ____________________________________________!
   C Bye!

3 A Good morning. Dixons Electrical. How can I help you?
   B Good morning. ________________?
   A I’m afraid Mr Smith isn’t in his office at the moment. ________________?
   B Don’t worry. ________________.
   A All right. Goodbye.
   B Goodbye.

4 T 6.10 Listen and check.

Music of English

T 6.11 Listen and practise the telephone expressions.

Can I speak to Jo please? I’ll ring back later.
Is that Emma? Can I take a message?
I’ll just get her.

5 Practise the conversations. Make similar conversations with your partner.

WRITING Formal letters p117
7 Then and now
Past Simple - regular verbs • Irregular verbs • Words that go together • What's the date?

STarter
When were your grandparents and great-grandparents born? Where were they born? Do you know all their names? What were their jobs? If you know, tell the class.

WEN I WAS YOUNG
Past Simple - regular verbs

1 Look at the photos. Do you know anything about the film star Shirley Temple?
2 **T 7.1** Read and listen to Shirley Temple Black's life now. Complete text **A** with the verbs you hear.
3 **T 7.2** Read and listen to text **B** about Shirley's life a long time ago.

GRAMMAR SPOT

1 Find examples of the past of **is** and **can** in text **B**.
2 Complete the sentences with **work** in the correct form.
   Now she ______ at Stanford University.
   When she was a child she ______ in films.
3 Find the Past Simple of **start**, **dance**, **like**, and **retire** in text **B**. How do we form the Past Simple of regular verbs?

A Shirley Temple Black _______ a retired politician. She _______ with her husband in California. She _______ cooking and playing with her grandchildren. Also, she sometimes _______ at Stanford University for the Institute of International Studies. She _______ there every month and _______ foreign ministers. They _______ world problems.

B The Child Star
When she was very young, Shirley was a famous movie star. She started in films when she was only three years old! She could act, she was a good singer and she also danced well. She liked acting very much, and worked in over 50 films. But when she was 20, she retired from the cinema.
4 T 7.3 What is the past form of these verbs? Listen and practise saying them.

like  look  work  earn  love
study  act  decide  want  start

5 T 7.4 Read and listen to text C. Complete the text, using the Past Simple form of the verbs in exercise 4.

GRAMMAR SPOT

1 Find a question with did and a negative with didn't in text C.
2 Look at these questions.
   Where does she work now?
   Where did she work in 1950?
   Did is the past of do and does. We use did to form a question in the Past Simple.
3 We use didn't (= did not) to form the negative.
   She didn't go to school.

Grammar Reference 7.2 p142

6 Complete the questions about Shirley.

1 When did she start in films?
   When she was only three years old.
2 How many films did she act in?
   Over 50.
3 Who did she act for?
   20th Century Fox Film Studios.
4 How much money did her films earn?
   Over $35 million.
5 Where did she go to school?
   At the film studio. She didn't go to school.
6 When did she act school?
   When she was 12.
7 What did she do to do?
   Go to university.
8 Why did she stop acting?
   Because her movies weren't so popular any more.

T 7.5 Listen and check. Practise the questions and answers with a partner.
PRACTICE
Talking about yourself

1 Complete the sentences with did, was, or were.

1 Where ________ you born?
   Where ________ your mother born?
2 When ________ you start school?
3 When ________ you learn to read and write?
4 Who ________ your first teacher?
5 What ________ your favourite subject?
6 Where ________ you live when you ________ a child?
7 ________ you live in a house or a flat?

2 Stand up! Ask two or three students the questions in exercise 1.

3 Tell the class some of the information you learned.

THE YEAR I WAS BORN
Irregular verbs

1 Look at the list of irregular verbs on p158. Write the Past Simple form of the verbs in the box. Which one isn’t irregular?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>be</th>
<th>begin</th>
<th>come</th>
<th>get</th>
<th>sing</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>leave</td>
<td>have</td>
<td>die</td>
<td>become</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>win</td>
<td>make</td>
<td>buy</td>
<td>sell</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 T 7.8 Listen and repeat the Past Simple forms.

3 T 7.9 James was born in 1984. Listen to his conversation with his parents and complete the sentences. Then listen again and check.

1984
... the year I was born

James was born on 24 January, 1984, in Hong Kong. His parents ________ Hong Kong that year and ________ back to Britain. His father ________ a job in London.

POLITICS
In Britain, Margaret Thatcher ________ Europe’s first woman prime minister. US President Ronald Reagan ________ another four years in the White House. The Soviet leader Yuri Andropov ________ after only a year as leader.

SPORTS
American athlete Carl Lewis ________ four gold medals at the Los Angeles Olympics. The Soviet Union didn’t go to the Olympics that year. Tiger Woods ________ junior golf champion at the age of eight.

SCIENCE
Apple Macintosh ________ a new personal computer and millions of people ________ one.

MUSIC
Michael Jackson’s Thriller ________ 43 million albums. Madonna ________ Holiday. And Paul McCartney, Tina Turner and David Bowie all ________ hit records that year.
4 Work with a partner. Ask and answer questions about the year James was born.
1 When/James and his parents leave Hong Kong?
2 Where/his father get a job?
3 How many medals/Carl Lewis win?
4 What/Apple Macintosh make?
5 Which song/Madonna sing?
6 How many albums/Michael Jackson's Thriller sell?
5 Make notes about the year you were born. Write about it. Tell the class.

PRACTICE
When did it happen?
1 Work in groups. Think of important events in history. When did they happen? Make a list, then make questions to ask the other groups.

What did you do?

2 Work with a partner. Ask and answer questions with When did you last ...? Ask another question for more information.

Check it
3 Tick (✓) the correct sentence.
1 □ He bought some new shoes.
□ He buyed some new shoes.
2 □ Where did you go yesterday?
□ Where you went yesterday?
3 □ You see Jane last week?
□ Did you see Jane last week?
4 □ Did she get the job?
□ Did she got the job?
5 □ I went out yesterday evening.
□ I went out last evening.
6 □ He studied French at school.
□ He studied French at school.
7 □ What had you for breakfast?
□ What did you have for breakfast?
8 □ I was in New York the last week.
□ I was in New York last week.

WRITING Describing a holiday p118
RE<sup>AD</sup>ING AND SPEAKING

Two famous firsts

1 Translate these words.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>nouns</th>
<th>verbs</th>
<th>adjectives</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>airshow</td>
<td>break a record</td>
<td>excellent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fighter jet</td>
<td>travel</td>
<td>dangerous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flight</td>
<td>disappear</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>experiences</td>
<td>join</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>satellite</td>
<td>survive</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>crash</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 Look at the texts and complete these sentences.

Amelia Mary Earhart was the first ____________.
Yuri Gagarin was the first ____________.

3 Work in two groups.

**Group A** Read about Amelia Earhart.
**Group B** Read about Yuri Gagarin.

4 Are the sentences true (✓) or false (X) about your person? Correct the false sentences.

1 He/She came from a rich family.
2 He/She had a short but exciting life.
3 He/She fought in a World War.
4 He/She wanted to be a pilot when he/she was a child.
5 He/She flew fighter jets.
6 He/She married, but didn’t have any children.
7 He/She travelled to Europe to talk about his/her experiences.
8 He/She died in a plane crash.

5 Find a partner from the other group. Compare Amelia Earhart and Yuri Gagarin, using your answers.

6 Complete the questions about the other person. Then ask and answer them with your partner.

**About Amelia Earhart**

1 Where ... she born?
2 What ... she study first?
3 When ... she first ... up in a plane?
4 When ... she ... her first record?
5 ... she marry? ... she ... any children?
6 What ... she do in 1935?
7 Where ... her plane disappear?

**About Yuri Gagarin**

8 Where ... he born?
9 When ... he see his first plane?
10 Why ... he ... the Russian Air Force?
11 Why ... the doctors choose Yuri to be an astronaut?
12 What ... he do in 1961?
13 Why ... he ... around the world?
14 How ... he die?

**What do you think?**

Name some famous people from history. What did they do?
Amelia Mary Earhart **AMERICAN** (1897 – 1937)

The first woman to fly across the Atlantic

Her early years
Amelia was born in her grandparents’ house in Kansas. Her parents didn’t have any money, but her grandparents were rich and sent her to the best schools. At 20 she decided to study nursing and worked in a hospital in World War I. When she was 23, she visited an airshow and went up in a plane. At that moment, she knew that she wanted to be a pilot.

What she did
In 1920 flying was dangerous and people didn’t think it was an activity for women. But Amelia had flying lessons, and a year later, she broke her first record – she flew up to 14,000 feet. She married at 34, but never had children. The next year she became the first woman (and the second person) to fly alone across the Atlantic. She was now famous, and she travelled around the world to talk about her experiences. And in 1935, when she was 38, she became the first person to fly alone across the Pacific.

Her last flight
When she was nearly 40, Amelia wanted to be the first woman to fly around the world. She began the 29,000 mile flight in Miami on 1 June 1937. On 2 July she was nearly at the end of her journey, when she and her plane disappeared near Howland Island in the Pacific Ocean.

---

Yuri Gagarin **RUSSIAN** (1934 – 1968)

The first man in space

His early years
Yuri was born on a farm and his family was very poor. As a teenager in World War II, he saw his first plane – a Russian fighter jet. At that moment, he knew that he wanted to be a pilot. He studied hard so that he could join a flying club. His teachers thought he was a natural pilot and told him to join the Russian Air Force.

What he did
He became an excellent pilot. And he was now a husband and father. But when the first Russian satellite went into space, he wanted to become an astronaut. After two years of secret training, the doctors chose Yuri because he was the best in all the tests. On 12 April 1961, when he was 27, he finally went into space. It was very dangerous, because the doctors didn’t know if Yuri could survive the journey. When he came back to Earth he was famous, and he travelled around the world to talk about his experiences.

His last flight
He wanted to go into space again, so in 1967 he began training for the next space flight. He was also a test pilot for new Air Force aeroplanes. But the next year he died when his fighter jet crashed on a test flight. He was only 34.
VOCABULARY AND LISTENING
Words that go together

Verbs and nouns

1. Match a verb in A with a noun in B. Sometimes there is more than one answer.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A</th>
<th>B</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>become</td>
<td>television</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drink</td>
<td>a sandwich</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drive</td>
<td>a bike</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eat</td>
<td>a pilot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>break</td>
<td>a car</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cook</td>
<td>a meal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>play</td>
<td>a lot of money</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>watch</td>
<td>the guitar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>win</td>
<td>Spanish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>speak</td>
<td>a record</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ride</td>
<td>a cup of tea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>earn</td>
<td>a medal</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Ask and answer questions.

Do you drink tea in the morning?

No, I don’t. I drink coffee.

When did you last eat a sandwich?

This morning. Yesterday. Last week.

Prepositions

2. Fill the gaps with the correct preposition.

1. I like listening ______ to ______ music.
2. I went ______ the beach ______ my friends.
3. We went to Spain ______ holiday last year.
4. She travelled ______ the world.
5. I get up ______ 11 o’clock ______ Sundays.
6. My father works ______ an office ______ the town centre.
7. Our town has a lot ______ tourists ______ summer.
8. My parents are ______ home ______ the moment.
9. What’s ______ television this evening?
10. I wrote an email ______ my daughter.

Compound nouns

3. Match a noun in A with a noun in B. Do we write one word or two?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A</th>
<th>B</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>post office</td>
<td>homework</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>orange</td>
<td>paper</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>railway</td>
<td>room</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>swimming</td>
<td>pool</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hand</td>
<td>juice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boy</td>
<td>park</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>news</td>
<td>star</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>film</td>
<td>card</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>birthday</td>
<td>station</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>washing</td>
<td>machine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>living</td>
<td>friend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>car</td>
<td>bag</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

T 7.10 Listen, check, and repeat.

4. Test the other students!

This is where we can go swimming. ______

I buy this every day and read it. ______

5. T 7.11 Listen to four conversations. What are they about? Which compound nouns do you hear?

1. ______ ______ ______
2. ______ ______ ______
3. ______ ______ ______
4. ______ ______ ______

Look at the tapescript on p130. Practise the four conversations with a partner.
EVENDAY ENGLISH

What's the date?

1. Write the correct word below the numbers.

fourth  twelfth  sixth  twentieth  second  thirtieth
thirteen  thirty-first  fifth  seventeenth  tenth
sixteenth  first  third  twenty-first

1st  2nd  3rd  4th  5th
6th  10th  12th  13th  16th
17th  20th  21st  30th  31st

T 7.12 Listen and practise saying the ordinals.

2. Ask and answer questions with a partner about the months of the year.

Which is the first month? January.

We write: 3/4/1999 or 3 April 1999
We say: 'The third of April, nineteen ninety-nine.'
or: 'April the third, nineteen ninety-nine.'

Notice how we say these years:
1900 'nineteen hundred'
1905 'nineteen oh five'
2001 'two thousand and one'
2012 'two thousand and twelve', or 'twenty twelve'

3. Practise saying these dates.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Date</th>
<th>Date</th>
<th>Date</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 April</td>
<td>19 November</td>
<td>3/10/99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 March</td>
<td>23 June</td>
<td>31/5/2000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17 September</td>
<td>29/2/76</td>
<td>15/7/2007</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

T 7.13 Listen and check.

4. T 7.14 Listen and write the dates you hear.

5. Ask and answer the questions with your partner.

1. What's the date today?
2. When did this school course start? When does it end?
3. When's Christmas Day?
4. When's Valentine's Day?
5. When's Mother's Day this year?
6. When's your birthday?
7. What century is it now?
8. What are the dates of public holidays in your country?
8 A date to remember

Past Simple 2 – negatives – ago • Spelling and silent letters • Special occasions

STARTER

What is the Past Simple of these verbs? Most of them are irregular.

- eat
- drink
- drive
- fly
- listen to
- make
- ride
- take
- watch
- wear

FAMOUS INVENTIONS

Past Simple negatives – ago

1 Match the verbs from the Starter with the photos.

2 Work in groups. What year was it a hundred years ago? Ask and answer questions about the things in the photos. What did people do? What didn’t they do?

Did people drive cars a hundred years ago?

- Yes, I think they did.
- I’m not so sure.
- No, they didn’t.

3 Tell the class the things you think people did and didn’t do.

We think people drove cars, but they didn’t watch TV.

Getting information

4 When were the things in the photos invented? Ask and answer with a partner.

Student A Go to p149.
Student B Go to p150.

A When were cars invented?
B In ...
A That’s ... years ago.
GRAMMAR SPOT

1. Write the Past Simple forms.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present Simple</th>
<th>Past Simple</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I live in London.</td>
<td>I lived in London.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He lives in London.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do you live in London?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Does she live in London?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I don’t live in London.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He doesn’t live in London.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Complete these sentences.

The year 2000 was ________ years ago.
The year 1984 was ________ years ago.

Grammar Reference 8.1 and 8.2 p142

PRACTICE

Time expressions

1. Make correct time expressions.

   in
   on
   at

   ___ seven o'clock  ___ the morning
   ___ Saturday  ___ Sunday evening
   ___ night  ___ September
   ___ 2002  ___ weekends
   ___ summer  ___ the nineteenth century

2. Work with a partner. Ask and answer questions with When ...? Use a time expression and ago in the answer.

   When did you get up?
   
   At __seven o'clock, three hours ago__.

   When did this term start?
   
   In __September, two months ago__.

When did ...?

- you get up
- you have breakfast
- you arrive at school
- you start learning English
- you start at this school

- this term start
- you last use a computer
- you learn to ride a bicycle
- your parents get married
- you last have a coffee break

3. Tell the class about your day so far. Begin like this.

I got up at seven o'clock and had breakfast. I left the house at ...
PRACTICE

Three inventions
1 Look at the texts. What are the three inventions?
2 The dates in the texts are all incorrect. Read and listen, and correct the dates.
3 Make these sentences negative. Then give the correct answers.
4 Work with a partner. Make more incorrect sentences about the texts. Give them to a partner to correct.

Did you know that?
5 Read and listen to the conversations. Then listen and repeat.

A Did you know that Marco Polo brought spaghetti back from China?
B Really? He didn’t! That’s incredible!
A Well, it’s true!

C Did you know that Napoleon was afraid of cats?
D He wasn’t! I don’t believe it!
C Well, it’s true!

6 Work with a partner. 
Student A Go to p149. 
Student B Go to p151. 
Make similar conversations.

The photograph
LOUIS DAGUERRE FROM FRANCE
Louis Daguerre was a painter for the French opera. But he wanted to make a new type of picture. He started his experiments in the 1920s. Twelve years later he invented the photograph. He sold his idea to the French government in 1935 and the government gave it to the world. Daguerre called the first photographs ‘daguerreotypes’. They became popular very fast. By 1940, there were 70 daguerreotype studios in New York City.

The windscreen wiper
MARY ANDERSON FROM THE USA
Mary Anderson often visited New York City by car. In winter she noticed that when it rained or snowed, drivers got out of their cars all the time to clean their windows. In 1893 she began designing something to clean the windows from inside the car. People, especially men, laughed at her idea. But they didn’t laugh for long. She invented the windscreen wiper in 1925. And by 1960 all American cars had them.

The bicycle
KIRKPATRICK MACMILLAN FROM SCOTLAND
Long ago in 1540, Leonardo da Vinci drew a design for the modern bicycle. But the first person to make a bicycle was Kirkpatrick Macmillan in 1789. He lived in Scotland, so people didn’t hear about his invention for a long time. Twenty years later, another bicycle came from France. In 1825 the bike became cheap and everyone could have one. Now people, especially women, could travel to the next town. It helped them find someone to marry!
LISTENING AND SPEAKING

How did you two meet?

1 Put the sentences in the correct order. There is more than one answer!

☐ They got married.
☐ They went out for a year.
☐ They fell in love.
☐ They had two children.
☐ Jack and Jill met at a party.
☐ They got engaged.
☐ They got divorced.

2 Look at the photos of two couples and read the introductions to their stories. What do you think happened next?

3 T 8.4 Listen to them talking. Were your ideas correct?

4 Answer the questions about Carly and Ned, and Eric and Lori.

1. When did both couples meet?
2. What did Carly think of Ned?
3. What did Ned’s girlfriend think of Carly? Why?
4. Where did Eric and Lori’s mothers meet?
5. Why didn’t Eric and Lori want to meet?
6. What did Eric and Lori think when they met?
7. Do both couples have children?

5 Who said these sentences? What was it about? Write C, N, E, or L in the boxes.

a ☐ I cried and cried.
b ☐ Our story is easy. We didn’t do anything.
c ☐ It was a big mistake.
d ☐ I just thought, ‘No way.’
e ☐ … all the old feelings came back.
f ☐ I took my sister with me.
g ☐ That was three years ago. Now I’m twenty-four, we’re married …
h ☐ … our wedding is in the fall*.  

* fall (American English) = autumn (British English)

Speaking

6 Imagine you are one of the people. Tell the story of how you met your husband/wife.

7 Look at these questions. Tell a partner about you and your family.

1. Are you married or do you have a girlfriend/boyfriend? How did you meet?
2. When did your parents or grandparents meet? Where? How?

уществ SONG I just called to say I love you
Teacher’s Book p144

 Huss WRITING About a friend p119
VOCABULARY AND PRONUNCIATION
Spelling and silent letters

1. There are many silent letters in English words. Practise saying these words.

   know /nɔʊ/  
   talk /tɔːk/  
   girl /gɜːl/  
   thought /θɔːt/

Cross out the silent letters in these words.

1. walk
2. listen
3. autumn
4. write
5. eight
6. island

   T 8.5 Listen and check. Practise saying the words.

2. Look at the phonetic spelling of these words from exercise 1. Write the words.

   1 /wɜːk/  work
   2 /kʌd/  
   3 /ˈlɪsn/  
   4 /ˈɔːtəm/  
   5 /ræt/  
   6 /ˈaɪlənd/  

3. Write the words. They all have silent letters.

   1 /bɔːn/  
   2 /bɒt/  
   3 /wɜːld/  
   4 /ˈɑːnsə/  
   5 /ˈkʌbəd/  
   6 /ˈkrɪsməs/  

   T 8.6 Listen and practise saying the words.

4. Read these sentences aloud.

   1. He bought his daughter eight white horses for Christmas.
   2. I know you know the answer.
   3. They walked and talked for hours and hours on the island.
   4. Listen and answer the questions.
   5. The girl took the wrong flight.
   6. The world is lovely in autumn.

   T 8.7 Listen and check.

   Phonetic symbols p159
3 Complete the conversations. What are the occasions?

1 Happy _______ to you.
   Happy _______ to you.
   Happy _______, dear Grandma,
   Happy _______ to you.

2 A Did you get any _______ cards?
   B Yes, I did. Listen to this.
   Roses are red. Violets are blue.
   You are my _______
   And I love you.
   A Wow! Do you know who it’s from?
   B No idea!

3 A Wake up, Mummy! Happy _______!
   B Thank you, darling. Oh, what
   beautiful flowers, and a cup of tea!
   A And I made you a card! Look!
   B It’s lovely. What a clever boy!

4 A Congratulations!
   B Thank you very much!
   A When’s the big day?
   B Pardon?
   A When’s your _______ day?
   B The 26th June. Didn’t you get your
   invitation?

5 A It’s midnight! Happy _______ everybody!
   B Happy _______!
   C Happy _______!

6 A Thank goodness! It’s Friday!
   B Yeah. Have a nice _______!
   A Same to you.

7 A Ugh! Work again. I hate Monday
   mornings!
   B Me too. Did you have a good
   _______?
   A Yes, I did. It was great.

T 8.8 Listen and check.

Music of English

Work with a partner. Choose a conversation
from exercise 3. Learn it by heart. Pay attention
to stress and intonation. Act it to the class.
Food you like!

Count and uncount nouns • I like/I’d like • some/any • much/many • Food • Polite requests

STARTER

What’s your favourite • fruit? • vegetable? • drink?

Write your answers. Compare them with a partner, then with the class.

FOOD AND DRINK

Count and uncount nouns

1 Match the food and drink with the photos. Which list has plural nouns, A or B?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A</th>
<th>B</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>apple juice</td>
<td>apples</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tea</td>
<td>oranges</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coffee</td>
<td>peaches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>milk</td>
<td>tomatoes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beer</td>
<td>hamburgers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>cheese</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>strawberries</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>carrots</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>peas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tomatoes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>hamburgers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>chips</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>biscuits</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 Listen to Daisy and Piers talking about what they like and don’t like. Tick (√) the food and drink that Daisy likes. What doesn’t Piers like?

3 Who says these things? Write D or P.

- I don’t like coffee at all.
- I like orange juice but I don’t like oranges.
- I don’t like fruit very much at all.
- I quite like bananas.
- I like all fruit.
- I like vegetables, especially carrots and peas.

4 Talk about the lists of food and drink with a partner. What do you like? What do you quite like? What don’t you like?

GRAMMAR SPOT

1 Look at the pairs of sentences. What is the difference?
   Chocolate is delicious. | Strawberries are delicious.
   Apple juice is good for you. | Apples are good for you.

2 Can we count apple juice? Can we count apples?

Grammar Reference 9.1 p143
I like... and I'd like...

1. Read and listen to the conversation between Piers and Daisy's mum.
   - **M** Hello, Piers. Would you like some **tea** or **coffee**?
   - **P** I'd like a cold drink, if that's OK.
   - **M** Of course. Would you like some **orange juice**?
   - **P** Yes, please. I'd love some.
   - **M** And would you like a chocolate **biscuit**?
   - **P** Oh, yes, please! Thank you very much.
   - **M** You're welcome.

2. Practise the conversation in exercise 1 with a partner. Then have similar conversations about other food and drink.

**GRAMMAR SPOT**
1. Look at the sentences. What is the difference?
   - **Do** you like tea? **Would** you like some tea?
   - I like biscuits. I'd like a biscuit. (I'd = I would)
   - Which sentences mean **Do you want/I want...**?

2. Look at these sentences.
   - I'd like some bananas. (plural noun)
   - I'd like some mineral water. (uncount noun)
   - We use some with both plural and uncount nouns.

3. Look at these questions.
   - Would you like some chips? **But** Are there any chips?
   - Can I have some tea? **But** Is there any tea?
   - We use some not any when we request and offer things.
   - We use any not some in other questions and negatives.

---

**PRACTICE**

Questions and answers

1. Choose Would/Do you like ... ? or I/I'd like ...
   1. **Would/Do** you like a ham sandwich?
      - No, thanks. I'm not hungry.
   2. **Do/Would** you like Ella?
      - Yes. She's very nice.
   3. **Do/Would** you like a cold drink?
      - Yes, cola, please.
   4. Can I help you?
      - Yes, **I/I'd** like some stamps, please.
   5. What sports do you do?
      - Well, I'd like swimming very much.
   6. Excuse me, are you ready to order?
      - Yes, I/I'd like a steak, please.

2. Listen and check. Practise with a partner.

**T 9.4**

Listen and choose the correct answers.

1. I like all sorts of fruit.
   - Yes. I'd like some fruit, please.
   - I like books by John Grisham.
3. I'd like a new bike.
   - I like riding my bike.
4. I'd like a cat but not a dog.
   - I like cats, but I don't like dogs.
5. I like Italian wine, especially red wine.
   - We'd like a bottle of Italian red wine.
6. No, thanks. I don't like ice-cream.
   - I'd like some ice-cream, please.

**T 9.5** Listen and check. Practise with a partner.
a or some?

3 Write a, an, or some.

1 _ a _ strawberry
2 _ some _ fruit
3 _ _ banana
4 _ _ bread
5 _ _ milk
6 _ _ meat
7 _ _ apple
8 _ _ toast
9 _ _ money
10 _ _ dollar
11 _ _ notebook
12 _ _ homework

4 Write a, an, or some.

1 _ _ egg
2 _ _ eggs

3 _ _ biscuit
4 _ _ biscuits

5 _ _ (cup of) coffee
6 _ _ coffee

7 _ _ ice-cream
8 _ _ ice-cream

AT THE MARKET

some/any, much/many

1 What can you see at the market? Talk about the photo. Use some/any and not much/not many.

There's some cheese. There aren't many cakes.
There isn't much bread. There aren't any potatoes.

GRAMMAR SPOT

1 We use many with count nouns in questions and negatives.
   How many cakes are there? There aren't many cakes.

2 We use much with uncount nouns in questions and negatives.
   How much bread is there? There isn't much bread.

Grammar Reference 9.4 p143

2 Read the shopping list. Ask and answer questions about what there is in the market.

Things to buy

bread
eggs
milk
butter
apples
biscuits
potatoes
carrots
strawberries
tomatoes
apple juice
cakes
cheddar cheese
tea

Is there any bread?
Yes, there is some.
How much is there?
There isn't much.

Is there any milk?
No, there isn't.
Are there any apples?
Yes, there are.
How many are there?
A lot.

3 T 9.6 Piers and his mum are at the market. Listen and tick (✓) the things they buy from the list above. What don't they buy?

4 Look at the tapescript on p132. Work in groups of three. Practise the conversation.
PRACTICE

**much or many?**

1. Complete the questions using *much* or *many*.
   1. How _____ people are there in the room?
   2. How _____ petrol is there in the car?
   3. How _____ money do you have in your pocket?
   4. How _____ eggs are there in the cupboard?
   5. How _____ milk is there in the fridge?
   6. How _____ apples do you want?

2. Choose an answer for each question in exercise 1.
   a. A kilo, please.
   b. There are two bottles.
   c. There are only two left in the box.
   d. Just five euros.
   e. Twenty. Nine men and eleven women.
   f. It's full.

3. Practise the questions and answers with a partner.

**Check it**

4. Correct the sentences.
   1. How much potatoes do you want? \( \times \) 
   \( \text{How many potatoes do you want?} \)
   2. I don't like an ice-cream.
   3. Can I have a bread, please?
   4. I'm hungry. I like a sandwich.
   5. There isn't many milk left.
   6. I'd like some fruits, please.
   7. How many money do you have?
   8. We have lot of homework today.

**Roleplay**

5. Work with a partner. Make a shopping list each. Buy the things you need in the market. Take turns to be the seller.
READING AND SPEAKING
Food around the world

1 Which food and drink comes from your country? Which foreign food and drink is popular in your country?
2 Can you identify any places or nationalities in the photos? What food can you see?
3 Read the text. Write the correct question heading for each paragraph.

Where does our food come from?
What do we eat?
How do we eat?

Find lines in the text that match the photos.

4 Answer the questions.
1 When did human history start? Was it about 10,000 years ago or was it about 1 million years ago?
2 Do they eat much rice in the north of China?
3 Why do the Scandinavians and the Portuguese eat a lot of fish?
4 Where don’t people eat much fish?
5 Which countries have many kinds of sausages?
6 How many courses are there in China?
7 How do people eat in the Middle East?
8 Why can we now eat most things at any time of the year?

What do you think?

5 Work in small groups and discuss these questions about your country.
1 What is a typical breakfast?
2 What does your family have for breakfast?
3 Is lunch or dinner the main meal of the day?
4 What is a typical main meal?

Writing

6 Write a paragraph about meals in your country. Use your ideas from exercise 5.
For 99% of human history, people took their food from the world around them. They ate all that they could find, and then moved on. Then about 10,000 years ago, or for 1% of human history, people learned to farm the land and control their environment.

The kind of food we eat depends on which part of the world we live in, or which part of our country we live in. For example, in the south of China they eat rice, but in the north they eat noodles. In Scandinavia, they eat a lot of herrings, and the Portuguese love sardines. But in central Europe, away from the sea, people don’t eat so much fish, they eat more meat and sausages. In Austria, Germany, and Poland there are hundreds of different kinds of sausages.

In North America, Australia, and Europe there are two or more courses to every meal and people eat with knives and forks. In China there is only one course, all the food is together on the table, and they eat with chopsticks. In parts of India and the Middle East people use their fingers and bread to pick up the food.

Nowadays it is possible to transport food easily from one part of the world to the other. We can eat what we like, when we like, at any time of the year. Bananas come from the Caribbean or Africa; rice comes from India or the USA; strawberries come from Chile or Spain. Food is very big business. But people in poor countries are still hungry, and people in rich countries eat too much.
LISTENING AND SPEAKING
My favourite national food

1 Look at the photos of four national dishes. Which do you like? Match them with the countries.

| Italy | Argentina | England | Austria |

2 Find these things in the photos.

toast tomatoes chilli onions egg bacon chocolate beef sausage

3 T 9.7 Listen to the people. What nationality are they? Match them with their favourite food. What do they say about them?

Anke

Graham

Sergio

Madalena

4 Answer these questions about the people.

1 Who . . . ?
   - travels a lot
   - goes to cafés to eat their favourite food
   - likes sweet things
   - eats their favourite food at home
2 Where is Café Sacher?
3 Who invented Sachertorte?
4 When does Graham eat a full English breakfast?
5 How do you make bruschetta?
6 Where is Sergio's favourite place to go?
7 How often does Madalena eat beef?
8 Who cooks it for her?

What do you think?

- What are your favourite national foods?
- When and where do you eat them?
- Describe them to your partner.
EVERYDAY ENGLISH

Polite requests

1. What can you see in the photograph?
2. Match the questions and responses.

1. Would you like some more rice?
   - Black, no sugar, please.
   - Yes, of course. I'm glad you like it.
2. Could you pass the salt, please?
   - Do you want sparkling or still?
   - Yes, please. It's delicious.
   - Yes, of course. Here you are.
3. Could I have a glass of water, please?
   - Yes, please. I'd love some.
4. Does anybody want more wine?
   - No, of course not. We have a dishwasher.
5. How would you like your coffee?
6. This is delicious! Can you give me the recipe?
7. Do you want help with the washing-up?

T 9.8 Listen and check.

We use Can/Could I . . . ? to ask for things.
Can I have a glass of water?
Could I have a glass of water?
We use Can/Could you . . . ? to ask other people to do things for us.
Can you give me the recipe?
Could you pass the salt?

Music of English

T 9.9 Listen. Notice how the voice goes up at the end of a polite request. Practise the polite intonation.

Could you pass the salt, please?
Could I have a glass of water, please?
Can you give me the recipe?
Can I see the menu, please?

3. Complete these requests with Can/Could I . . . ? or Can/Could you . . . ?

1. ___________ have a cheese sandwich, please?
2. ___________ tell me the time, please?
3. ___________ take me to the station, please?
4. ___________ see the menu, please?
5. ___________ lend me some money, please?
6. ___________ help me with my homework, please?
7. ___________ borrow your dictionary, please?

4. Practise the requests with a partner. Give an answer for each request.

Can I have a cheese sandwich, please? Yes, of course. That's £1.75.

T 9.10 Listen and compare your answers.

WRITING Filling in forms p120 Unit 9 • Food you like! 73
10 Bigger and better!
Comparatives and superlatives • have got • City and country • Directions 2

STARTER
1 Do you prefer city life or country life? Why? Tell the class.
2 As a class, decide which is the most popular place to live.

I prefer city life because it’s exciting.
I don’t. I prefer country life. It’s quiet and relaxing.

CITY LIFE
Comparative adjectives

1 Match an adjective with its opposite. Which adjectives describe city life? Which describe country life?

2 T 10.1 Listen to Joel and Andy comparing city and country life. Do you agree?

3 T 10.2 Listen and repeat. Be careful with the sound /æ/.

The country is slower and safer than the city.

4 What do you think? Make sentences comparing city and country life.

The city is cheaper, safer, noisier, dirtier, more expensive, more exciting than the country.
The country is more quiet, clean, friendly, old, safe, relaxing, boring than the city.

5 Tell the class.

I think it’s safer in the country, but the city’s more exciting.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adjective</th>
<th>Opposite</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fast</td>
<td>cheap</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>modern</td>
<td>slow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>expensive</td>
<td>friendly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dangerous</td>
<td>clean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dirty</td>
<td>quiet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unfriendly</td>
<td>old</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>noisy</td>
<td>safe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exciting</td>
<td>relaxing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>busy</td>
<td>boring</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

GRAMMAR SPOT

1 Complete these comparatives. What are the rules?
I’m _________ (old) than you.
Your class is _________ (noisy) than my class.
Your car was _________ (expensive) than my car.

2 What are the comparatives of the adjectives in the chart?

3 The comparatives of good and bad are irregular. What are they?
good _________ bad _________

Grammar Reference 10.1 p144
PRACTICE

Much more than . . .

1 Write the correct form of the adjectives.

1 A Life in the country is __________ than city life. (slow)
   B Yes, the city’s much __________. (fast)

2 A New York is __________ Los Angeles. (safe)
   B No, it isn’t. New York is much __________. (dangerous)

3 A Seoul is __________ Beijing. (big)
   B No, it isn’t! It’s much __________. (small)

4 A Madrid is __________ Rome. (expensive)
   B No, it isn’t. Madrid is much __________. (cheap)

5 A The buildings in Rome are __________ the buildings in Prague. (modern)
   B No, they aren’t. They’re much __________. (old)

6 A Cafés in London are __________ cafés in Paris. (good)
   B No! Cafés in London are much __________. (bad)

T 10.3 Listen and check. Practise with a partner.

2 Work with a partner. Compare two towns or cities that you both know. Which one do you like better? Why?

COUNTRY LIFE

have got

1 T 10.4 Close your books. Listen to Andy and Joel’s conversation. Who moved to the village of Appleton? Who stayed in London?

2 Complete the conversation with the correct adjectives.

J So, Andy, tell me, why did you leave London? You had a __________ job.
A Yes, but I’ve got a __________ job here.
J And you had a __________ flat in London.
A Well, I’ve got a __________ place here. It’s a cottage!
J Really? How many bedrooms has it got?
A Three. And it’s got a garden. It’s __________ than my flat in London and it’s __________.
J But you haven’t got any friends!
A I’ve got a lot of new friends here. People are much __________ than in London.
J But the country’s so __________.
A No, it isn’t. I’ve got a surfboard now and I go surfing at weekends. Appleton has got a cinema, restaurants, pubs, and a nightclub.
And the air is __________ and the streets are __________.
J OK. OK. Everything is __________! Can I come next weekend?
A Of course you can!

3 Practise the conversation with a partner.

GRAMMAR SPOT

1 Have and have got both express possession.
   We often use have got in spoken British English.

I have a dog. I’ve got a dog. (I’ve = I have)
He has a car. He’s got a car. (He’s = He has)

Do you have a dog? Have you got a dog?
Does she have a car? Has she got a car?
They don’t have a flat. They haven’t got a flat.
It doesn’t have a garden. It hasn’t got a garden.

2 The past of both have and have got is had.

3 Find examples of have got and had in the conversation.

Grammar Reference 10.2 p144
PRACTICE

have/have got

1 Write the sentences again, using the correct form of have got.
   1 London has a lot of parks.
      London's got a lot of parks.
   2 I don't have much money.
      I haven't got much money.
   3 I have a lot of homework tonight.
   4 Do you have any homework?
   5 Our school has a good library, but it doesn't have many computers.
   6 My parents have a new DVD player.
   7 Does your sister have a boyfriend?
   8 I don't have a problem with this exercise.

I've got more than you!

2 Work with a partner. You are both famous film stars. Ask and answer questions to find out who is richer!

Student A  Student B
Go to p149. Go to p151.

I've got five boats.
How many have you got?
Twelve. I've got this one, four in the Mediterranean, two in the South Pacific, two in the Caribbean, and three in Asia.
Well, I've got thirty cars!
That's nothing! I've got ...

PARADISE ISLANDS
Superlative adjectives

Coral Club Resort
Barbados, Caribbean Sea
- Built in 1952
- 85 rooms
- $420 to $710 a night
- one bar and restaurant, swimming pool
- 40-minute taxi ride from airport

Palm Hotel Resort
Maldives, Indian Ocean
- Built in 1998
- 98 rooms
- $200 to $600 a night
- two bars and two restaurants
- 50-minute boat ride from airport

1 Here are some of the world's most relaxing holiday resorts. Which one do you like best?

2 Correct the false sentences. How many correct sentences (✓) are there? What is the same about them?
   1 The Coral Club is cheaper than the Palm Hotel.
   2 Bati Island is the most expensive resort.
   3 The Coral Club is newer than the Palm Hotel.
   4 The Palm Hotel is the newest resort.
   5 The Coral Club is bigger than the Palm Hotel.
   6 The Palm Hotel is the biggest resort.
   7 Bati Island is the smallest resort.
   8 The Coral Club has got two restaurants.
   9 Bati Island is nearer to the airport than the Palm Hotel.
   10 The Coral Club is the nearest to the airport.
   11 Bati Island is the furthest from the airport.
   12 The Palm Hotel has got a swimming pool.

3 Which is the best hotel in or near your town? What has it got?
PRACTICE

The biggest and best!

1. Complete the conversations using the superlative form of the adjective.

   1. That house is very big.
      
      Yes, it's the biggest house in the village.

   2. The Ritz is a very expensive hotel.
      
      Yes, ___________________________ in London.

   3. Appleton is a very pretty village.
      
      Yes, ___________________________ in England.

   4. New York is a very cosmopolitan city.
      
      Yes, ___________________________ in the world.

   5. Brad Pitt is a very popular film star.
      
      Yes, ___________________________ in America.

   6. Miss Smith is a very funny teacher.
      
      Yes, ___________________________ in our school.

   7. Anna is a very intelligent student.
      
      Yes, ___________________________ in the class.

   8. This is a very easy exercise.
      
      Yes, ___________________________ in the book.

   T10.5 Listen and check.

2. T10.6 Close your books. Listen to the first lines in exercise 1 and give the answers.

Talking about your class

3. How well do you know the other students in your class? Describe them using these adjectives and others.

   tall small old young intelligent funny

   I think Ivan is the tallest in the class. He's taller than Karl.
   Sofia's the youngest.
   I'm the most intelligent!

4. Write the name of your favourite film star. Read it to the class. Compare the people. Which film star is the most popular in your class?

Check it

5. Correct the sentences.

   1. Yesterday was more hot than today.
   2. She's taller that her brother.
   3. I'm the most young in the class.
   4. Last week was busier than this week.
   5. He doesn't got any sisters.
   6. Do you got any bread?
   7. My homework is the worse in the class.
   8. This exercise is most difficult in the book.

Unit 10 • Bigger and better! 77
READING AND SPEAKING

Viva la danza!

1 T 10.7 Do you know any Latin dances? Listen to three types of Latin dance music – flamenco, tango, and salsa. Which music goes with which city?

Buenos Aires  Havana  Seville

2 Where are these cities? What do you know about them? Each sentence is about one of them. Write BA, H, or S.

1 BA It is called ‘the Paris of the South’.
2 ___ It became independent from Spain in 1816.
3 ___ It is the capital city of Andalucía.
4 ___ In 1960 Fidel Castro led a socialist revolution.
5 ___ The Arabs ruled the city from 711 to 1248.
6 ___ It is one of Europe’s largest historical centres.
7 ___ African slaves came to work in the sugar and tobacco fields.
8 ___ It was Spain’s most important port in Latin America.
9 ___ More than 4 million European immigrants came to work there.

3 Work in three groups.

Group 1 Read about Buenos Aires.
Group 2 Read about Havana.
Group 3 Read about Seville.

Which sentences in exercise 2 are about your city?

4 Answer the questions about your city.
1 How many people live there?
2 Does it have a river? If yes, what is its name?
3 Why is it a tourist centre?
4 What are some important dates in its history?
5 Which famous people lived there?
6 What kind of music and dance is it famous for?
7 What or who were the influences on its music?
8 Which of these things can you do in the city you read about?
   • buy things in its beautiful shops
   • visit Ernest Hemingway’s house
   • see a famous fiesta
   • learn to dance in a club
   • hear music by Piazzolla in his home country
   • visit the Alcazar Palace

5 Find partners from the other two groups. Compare the cities, using your answers.

Buenos Aires

Buenos Aires is the capital city of Argentina. It stands on the banks of the River Plate, the world’s widest river. It has a population of 3 million, or 10 million, including Grand Buenos Aires. It is called ‘the Paris of the South’ because of its lovely European buildings. It is also a big commercial centre and visitors love its beautiful shops.

Its history

For a long time, Buenos Aires was a small port in the furthest corner of the Spanish Empire. It became independent from Spain in 1816. Then the British arrived to build railways across Argentina. More than 4 million European immigrants came between 1840 and 1940 to work on the railways. They were mostly young men. The city quickly grew and became very rich.

Its music and dance

Tango began in San Telmo, the poor immigrant area of the city, in the 19th century. Its biggest influence was flamenco guitar. It was a workers’ dance. There weren’t many women in Buenos Aires then, so men practised together in the streets, before they tried dancing with a woman. There are still many tango bars, which tourists always visit. Astor Piazzolla, the famous composer of modern tango, lived there before he died in 1992.
Havana

Havana is the capital of Cuba, the largest island in the Caribbean. It has a population of 2.2 million. It is one of the oldest cities in Latin America. It is a very cultural city and has lots of beautiful old Spanish buildings. In the 1990s Cuba became the second most popular tourist attraction in the Caribbean.

Its history

In the 16th century, Havana was Spain’s most important port and city in Latin America. Later, African slaves came here to work in the country’s sugar and tobacco fields. At the beginning of the 19th century, it was one of the richest cities in the West. Ernest Hemingway, the famous US writer, lived there from 1940. In 1960 Fidel Castro led a socialist revolution and became president.

Its music and dance

Havana was the birthplace of many Afro-Cuban dance styles, including salsa. The music was an exciting mixture of Spanish guitar and African drums. Salsa’s original name was ‘Casino’ because of the clubs (casinos) that people danced in. Later, Latin Americans in New York gave it the name ‘salsa’, meaning ‘spice’. Today tourists go to Havana to learn to salsa and to dance in the famous clubs.

Seville

Seville is the capital of Andalucía, and the largest city of Southern Spain, with a population of 750,000. It stands on the banks of the Guadalquivir river. It is one of Europe’s largest historical centres with many beautiful old buildings. Tourists also come for its famous fiesta in April.

Its history

The Arabs ruled the city from 711 to 1248. They built the Alcazar Palace and the Giralda tower. In 1503 Seville became the most important port in Spain for ships sailing to South America, and it was a very rich cultural centre. The famous painter Diego Velázquez was born here in 1599. Last century, there were two international exhibitions in Seville in 1929 and 1992.

Its music and dance

Flamenco began in the 17th century as a song and dance with very fast hand clapping. Arabs and gypsies were the biggest influence on flamenco. The guitar music came later. In the 18th century, one of the first flamenco schools began in the famous Triana district in Seville. Visitors can still find real flamenco here in the music cafés, but the music and dancing doesn’t start before midnight!
VOCABULARY AND PRONUNCIATION

City and country words

1. Match these words with the pictures. Which things do you usually find only in the country?

wood park museum church cathedral farm bridge
car park port factory pub field theatre lake
village hill mountain cottage building river

2. Complete the sentences with a word from exercise 1.

1. Everest is the highest ________ in the world.
2. The Golden Gate ________ in San Francisco is the longest ________ in the USA.
3. The Caspian Sea isn’t a sea, it’s the largest ________ in the world.
4. Rotterdam is the busiest ________ in Europe. Ships from all over the world stop there.
5. The Empire State ________ in New York was the tallest ________ in the world for over 40 years.
6. A church is much smaller than a ________.

T 10.8 Listen and check.

3. Write these words from exercise 1.

\text normal /\text{word}/ \quad /\text{museum}/ \quad /\text{church}/ \quad /\text{cathedral}/ \quad /\text{farm}/ \quad /\text{bridge}/ \quad /\text{park}/ \quad /\text{port}/ \quad /\text{factory}/ \quad /\text{pub}/ \quad /\text{field}/ \quad /\text{theatre}/ \quad /\text{lake}/ \quad /\text{village}/ \quad /\text{hill}/ \quad /\text{mountain}/ \quad /\text{cottage}/ \quad /\text{building}/ \quad /\text{river}/

T 10.9 Listen and repeat.

4. Divide into two groups. Play the game. Which group can continue the longest?

\text{Group 1} A walk in the country
Continue one after the other.

\text{I went for a walk in the country and I saw some \underline{shops}.}
\text{I went for a walk in the country and I saw a farm, and some cows.}
\text{I went for ...}

\text{Group 2} A walk in the city
Continue one after the other.

\text{I went for a walk in the city and I saw some \underline{shops}.}
\text{I went for a walk in the city and I saw some \underline{shops}, and a \underline{cathedral}.}
\text{I went for ...}

\text{WRITING} Describing a place p121
EVERYDAY ENGLISH
Directions 2

1. T 10.10 Listen to Andy’s directions to his cottage. Mark the route on the map. Then complete the directions.

   Leave the A34 at Apple Cross. ________ left at the traffic lights. Then go ________ the hill, and ________ the first bridge. OK? Then go ________ the second bridge, and ________ the road by the river. Go ________ the pub, and ________ right ________ the hill. Go ________ the corner past the farm, and my cottage is ________ right. It’s easy!

2. T 10.11 Complete the text with the prepositions. Listen to Joel and Andy’s conversation. Check your answers.

   along down into round over past through under up

Joel drove ________ the hill, ________ the first bridge, and ________ the second bridge.

Then he drove ________ the road by the river, ________ the pub, and ________ the hill.

Next he drove ________ the corner, off the road, ________ some apple trees, and ________ a lot of mud!

3. Cover the text. Look at the pictures and tell Joel’s story.

4. Work with a partner.  
   **Student A** Think of a place near your school. Give your partner directions, but do not say what the place is. 
   **Student B** Listen to the directions. Where are you?
1 Look around the classroom. Can you see any of these clothes?

- a hat
- a coat
- a jumper
- a shirt
- a T-shirt
- a dress
- a skirt
- a jacket
- a suit
- shorts
- trousers
- jeans
- shoes
- boots
- trainers

2 What are you wearing?
What is your teacher wearing?
Tell the class.

I’m wearing blue jeans and a white T-shirt.
You’re wearing a dress.

---

**DESCRIBING PEOPLE**

**Present Continuous**

1 Look at the photos. Describe the people.

Who . . . ?
- is pretty
- is good-looking
- is handsome

Who’s got . . . ?
- long
- short
- fair
- hair
- dark
- grey
- blue
- brown
- eyes

Sofia’s got dark hair and brown eyes.

2 What are they doing?

Who . . . ?
- is smiling
- is laughing
- is eating
- is standing up
- is drawing
- is reading

- is playing the guitar
- is sitting down
- is using a computer
- is painting
- is walking

Poppy’s pretty.

Ella’s smiling.

Andy’s wearing glasses.

Simon’s wearing a black jacket.

---

82 Unit 11 • Looking good!
PRACTICE

Talking about you

1 Write sentences that are true for you at the moment.
   1 I/wearing a jacket  I'm not wearing a jacket, I'm wearing a jumper.
   2 I/wearing jeans
   3 I/standing up
   4 I/looking out of the window
   5 it/raining
   6 teacher/writing
   7 we/working hard
   8 I/chewing gum

Tell a partner about yourself.

2 Work with a partner.
   Student A Choose someone in the classroom, but don’t say who.
   Student B Ask Yes/No questions to find out who it is!

   Is it a girl? Yes, it is.
   Is she sitting near the window? No, she isn't.
   Has she got fair hair? No, she hasn't.

3 Look out of the window. What can you see? Buildings? Hills? Fields?
   Can you see any people? What are they doing? Describe the scene.

---

GRAMMAR SPOT

1 Am/is/are + adjective describes people and things.
   She is young/tall/pretty.

2 Am/is/are + verb + -ing describes activities happening now. Complete the table.
   
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I</th>
<th>You</th>
<th>He/She</th>
<th>We</th>
<th>They</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>learning English.</td>
<td>sitting in a classroom.</td>
<td>listening to the teacher.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This is the Present Continuous tense.
What are the questions and the negatives?

3 What is the difference between these sentences?
   He speaks Spanish.
   He's speaking Spanish.

Grammar Reference 11.1 and 11.2 p145
Who’s at the party?

4 T 11.1 Oliver is at the party, but he doesn’t know anyone. Monica is telling him about the other guests. Listen and write the people’s names on the picture.

Listen again and complete the table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present Continuous</th>
<th>Present Simple</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Harry</td>
<td>He’s sitting down and he’s talking to Mandy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mandy</td>
<td>He works in LA.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fiona</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>George</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roz and Sam</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Getting information

6 Work with a partner.

Student A Look at the picture of a party on p149.

Student B Look at the picture of a party on p151.

Don’t show your picture! There are ten differences. Talk about the pictures to find them.

THE HOUSE IS A MESS!
Whose is it?

1 Find these things in the room. Then find them on the people on p85.

- a baseball cap
- boots
- a baby
- a plant
- trainers
- a coat
- sunglasses
- a tie
- a bag
- a football
- a briefcase

2 T 11.2 Listen to the questions. Complete the answers with his, hers, or theirs.

1 Whose is the baseball cap? It’s ______.

2 Whose are the boots? They’re ______.

3 Whose is the baby? It’s ______.

Practise the questions and answers with a partner. Then ask about the other things in exercise 1.

3 Give something of yours to the teacher. Ask and answer questions about the objects. Use these possessive pronouns.

mine yours his hers ours theirs

Who’s jacket is this? It’s Anya’s. It’s hers.

Is it yours, Anya? Yes, it’s mine.

In my picture three people are dancing.

In my picture four people are dancing.

There’s a girl with fair hair.

Is she wearing a black dress?
PRACTICE

who's or whose?

1 Choose the correct word. Compare your answers with a partner.
   1 I like your/yours house.
   2 Ours/Our house is smaller than their / theirs.
   3 And their/their's garden is bigger than our/ours, too.
   4 My/Mine children are older than her/hers.
   5 Whose/Who's talking to your/yours sister?
   6 This book isn't my/mine. Is it your/yours?
   7 'Whose/Who's dictionary is this?' 'It's his/him.'
   8 'Whose/Who's going to the party tonight?' 'I'm not.'
   9 'Whose/Who's dog is running round our/ours garden?'

2 T 11.3 Listen to the sentences. If the word is Whose? shout 1! If the word is Who's? shout 2!
   Who's on the phone? 2 Whose is it? 1

What a mess!

3 T 11.4 Complete the conversation. Listen and check.
   A __________ is this tennis racket?
   B It's __________.
   A What's it doing here?
   B I'm __________ tennis this afternoon.

   The Present Continuous can also describe activities happening in the near future.
   I'm playing tennis this afternoon.
   We're having pizza for dinner tonight.

4 Make more conversations with a partner.
   1 these football boots? / John's / playing football later
   2 these ballet shoes? / Mary's / going dancing tonight
   3 this suitcase? / mine / going on holiday tomorrow
   4 this coat? / Jane's / going for a walk soon
   5 this plane ticket? / Jo's / flying to Rome this afternoon
   6 all these glasses? / ours / having a party tonight

   T 11.5 Listen and check.

Check it

5 Correct the sentences.
   1 Alice is tall and she's got long, black hairs.
   2 Who's boots are these?
   3 I'm wearing a jeans.
   4 Look at Roger. He stands next to Jeremy.
   5 He's work in a bank. He's the manager.
   6 What is drinking Suzie?
   7 Whose that man in the garden?
   8 Where you going tonight?
   9 What you do after school today?
LISTENING AND SPEAKING

Looking for that something

1 What makes you happy? Think of five things that make you happy. Write them down. Compare them with a partner.

2 What makes you happiest? Choose one thing only. Compare with the class.

3 Close your books and listen to the song.

4 Read the song by an Irish band called Westlife.

Can you match these words from the song and their meanings?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>joy</th>
<th>looking / finding</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>to cherish</td>
<td>places / houses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to deny</td>
<td>parents / children</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>solitary</td>
<td>hair / eyes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the sunrise</td>
<td>special / interesting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>breakfast / morning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to love</td>
<td>dance / laugh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>happiness</td>
<td>friendship / water</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>when the sun comes up</td>
<td>many / much</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to say no to something alone, lonely</td>
<td>fight / sleep</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>say / know</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>her / you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>like / love</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>mine / theirs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>person / thing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>begins / stops</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>take / bring</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

What do you think?

- In the song, what does ‘flying without wings’ mean?
- Did you find any of the things on your list in the song?
Speaking

6 Read the questionnaire and answer the questions. Stand up. Ask students in the class the questions. Find people with the same answers as yours.

My favourite things

1 What’s your favourite food?

2 What’s your favourite drink?

3 What’s your favourite colour?

4 What are your favourite clothes?

5 What are your favourite shoes?

6 Who’s your favourite singer or band?

7 What are your favourite things to do at weekends?

8 Who’s your favourite person?

9 Where’s your favourite place?

10 Who’s your favourite film star or actor?

7 Tell the class which people like the same things as you.

Johann and I both like blue.

Stella and I both like trainers.

WRITING Describing people p122
VOCABULARY AND PRONUNCIATION

Words that rhyme

1 Read these lines. Which words rhyme?
   A Who knows whose roses those are?
   B Those flowers are ours, thank you.

T 11.7 Listen and check. Practise saying the lines.

2 Match the words that rhyme.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>red</th>
<th>kissed</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>green</td>
<td>dark</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hat</td>
<td>mean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>short</td>
<td>shoes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>park</td>
<td>said</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>list</td>
<td>that</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>whose</td>
<td>bought</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>eyes</th>
<th>beer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>those</td>
<td>pay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ours</td>
<td>wear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hair</td>
<td>knows</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>near</td>
<td>size</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grey</td>
<td>flowers</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3 Write two of the words on each line according to the sound.

Vowels
1 /e/ __red___ said__
2 /æ/ ___
3 /i/ ___
4 /i:/ ___
5 /a:/ ___
6 /u:/ ___
7 /ɔ:/ ___

Diphthongs
1 /au/ ___eyes___
2 /ɔ/ ___
3 /eɪ/ ___
4 /eə/ ___
5 /əʊ/ ___
6 /ʌɪ/ ___

T 11.8 Listen and check.

4 Can you add any more words to the lists? Practise saying them.

red  said  bed  head  ...
hat  that  cat  ...

Phonetic symbols p159

Tongue twisters

5 T 11.9 Tongue twisters are sentences that are difficult to say. They are good pronunciation practice. Listen, then try saying these quickly to a partner.

Four Fine fresh FISH for you

If a dog chews shoes, whose shoes does he choose?

Six Silly Sisters selling Shiny Shoes

I'm looking back

to see if she's looking back

to see if I'm looking back

to see if she's looking back

to see if she's looking back at me!

6 Choose two tongue twisters and learn them. Say them to the class.
EVERYDAY ENGLISH

In a clothes shop

1 Read the lines of a conversation in a clothes shop. Who says them, the customer or the shop assistant? Write SA or C.

   a  □ Can I help you?  SA
   b  □ Oh yes, I like that one much better. Can I try it on?  C
   c  □ £39.99. How do you want to pay?  C
   d  □ Yes, please. I'm looking for a shirt to go with my new jeans.
   e  □ Blue.
   f  □ Yes, of course. The changing rooms are over there.
       … Is the size OK?
   g  □ OK. I'll take the green. How much is it?
   h  □ Can I pay by credit card?
   i  □ What colour are you looking for?
   j  □ No, it isn't the right blue.
   k  □ No, it's a bit too big. Have you got a smaller size?
   l  □ That's the last blue one we've got. I'm afraid. But we've got it in green.
   m  □ Well, what about this one? It's a bit darker blue.
   n  □ What about this one? Do you like this?
   o  □ Credit card's fine. Thank you very much.

2 Can you match any lines with the photos?

   Photo 1    SA  Can I help you?
              C  Yes, please. I'm looking for a shirt to go with my new jeans.

3 Work with a partner and put the all the lines in the correct order.

   T 11.10 Listen and check.

Music of English

Practise the conversation with your partner. Pay attention to stress and intonation.

4 Make more conversations in a clothes shop. Buy some different clothes.

   SONG Wonderful tonight
   Teacher's Book p149
Life's an adventure!

going to future • Infinitive of purpose • The weather • Making suggestions

STARTER

1 How many sentences can you make?
2 Make similar true sentences about you. Tell the class.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I'm going to Brazil</th>
<th>I went to Brazil</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>when I was a student.</td>
<td>next month.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in a year's time.</td>
<td>two years ago.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>when I retire.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

FUTURE PLANS

going to

1 Jack and his sports teacher, Danny Carrick, both have plans for the future. Read their future plans. Which do you think are Jack's? Which are Danny's? Write J or D.

Jack: I'm going to be a footballer.
Danny: I'm going to travel all over the world.

1 J I'm going to be a footballer.
2 D I'm going to travel all over the world.
3 J I'm going to train very hard.
4 D I'm going to try new things.
5 J I'm going to play for Manchester United.
6 D I'm not going to marry until I'm very old.
7 D I'm not going to stay at home and watch TV.
8 J I'm going to learn to scuba-dive.
9 D I'm going to write a book.
10 D I'm going to be famous.

T 12.1 Listen and check. Were you correct?

2 Talk first about Jack, then about Danny. Use the ideas in exercise 1.

Jack's going to be a footballer.

He's going to... He isn't going to...

Which two plans are the same for both of them?

They're both going to...

3 T 12.2 Listen and repeat the questions and answers about Jack.

Is he going to be a footballer? Yes, he is.
What's he going to do? Train very hard.
PRACTICE

Questions about Jack

1 With a partner, make more questions about Jack. Then match them with an answer.

Questions
1 Why/he/train very hard?
2 How long/play football?
3 When/marry?
4 How many children/have?
5 Who/teach to play?

Answers
a Until he’s 35.
b Two.
c His sons.
d Not until he's very old—about 25!
e Because he wants to be a footballer.

2 T 12.3 Listen and check. Practise the questions and answers with your partner.

Questions about you

3 Are you going to do any of these things after the lesson? Ask and answer the questions with a partner.

1 watch TV
2 have a coffee
3 catch a bus
4 eat in a restaurant
5 meet some friends
6 cook a meal
7 go shopping
8 wash your hair
9 do your homework

GRAMMAR SPOT

1 The verb to be + going to expresses future plans. Complete the table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I</th>
<th>You</th>
<th>He/She</th>
<th>We</th>
<th>They</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>going to leave tomorrow.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

What are the questions and the negatives?

2 Is there much difference between these two sentences?

I'm leaving tomorrow. I'm going to leave tomorrow.

Grammar Reference 12.1 p146
I want to see the world!
Infinitive of purpose

1 Match the places and activities. Can you find them in the photos?

Nepal fly over the Grand Canyon
Brazil climb Mount Everest
The Great Barrier Reef take photographs of the lions
China walk along the Great Wall
Hawaii go scuba-diving
Alaska visit the rainforest
the USA watch whales
Kenya go surfing

2 Danny Carrick is going to visit all the countries in exercise 1. He is telling his friend, Harold, about his plans. Read their conversation and complete the last sentence.

Danny First I’m going to Nepal.
Harold Why?
Danny To climb Mount Everest!
Harold Oh my goodness! Where are you going after that?
Danny Well, then I’m going to Kenya to ...

T 12.5 Listen and check. Practise the conversation with a partner.

3 Would you like to try any of these activities?

Put a sentence from exercise 5 into each gap.

1 Take an umbrella.
2 Look at the time!
3 Anna’s running very fast.
4 Look! Jack’s on the wall!
5 Look at that man!
6 . It’s due next month.
7 There’s my sister and her boyfriend!
8 ‘Oh dear.’ . ‘Bless you!’

T 12.4 Listen and check.
GRAMMAR SPOT

1. With the verbs to go and to come, we usually use the Present Continuous for future plans.
   I'm going to Nepal tomorrow.
   She's coming this evening.
   She's going to come this evening.

2. Do these sentences mean the same?
   I'm going to Nepal to climb Mount Everest.
   I'm going to Nepal because I want to climb Mount Everest.
   The infinitive can tell us why something happens.
   I'm going to America to learn English.

PRACTICE

Roleplay

1. Work with a partner. Student A is Harold, Student B is Danny. Ask and answer questions about the places.
   
   Harold: Why are you going to Nepal?
   Danny: To climb Mount Everest!
   Harold: Oh my goodness!

2. Talk about Danny Carrick's journey. Use first, then, next, after that.

   First he's going to Nepal to climb Mount Everest.
   Then he's...

Why...? and When...?

3. Write down the names of some places you went to in the past. Ask and answer questions about the places with a partner.

   Why did you go to England?
   To learn English.
   When did you go? Two years ago.

   Why did you go to Switzerland?
   To visit my cousins.
   When did you go? Last year.

Tell the class about your partner.

4. Use your imagination! Write down the names of some places you are going to in the future and do the same.

   Why are you going to Paris?
   To go shopping.
   When are you going? In two weeks' time.

Check it

5. Tick (✓) the correct sentence.

   1. □ Is going to rain.
      □ It's going to rain.

   2. □ Do you wash your hair this evening?
      □ Are you going to wash your hair this evening?

   3. □ She's going to have a baby.
      □ She's going to has a baby.

   4. □ I'm going to the post office to buy some stamps.
      □ I'm going to the post office for buy some stamps.

   5. □ I'm going home early this evening.
      □ I'm go home early this evening.

   6. □ I opened the window to get some fresh air.
      □ I opened the window for to get some fresh air.
READING AND SPEAKING

Born free

1 Which of these sports do you think is the most dangerous? Put them in order 1–6. 1 is the most dangerous. Compare your ideas with a partner and then the class.

- skiing
- windsurfing
- football
- golf
- mountain-climbing
- scuba-diving

2 Match a verb with a noun or phrase.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>jump</th>
<th>a medal</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>join</td>
<td>over a wall</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>win</td>
<td>underwater</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>swim</td>
<td>a record</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>break</td>
<td>oxygen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>breathe</td>
<td>a class</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3 Look at the photos of Tanya Streeter and David Belle. Do you know what the sport is? Work in two groups.

**Group A** Read about Tanya.

**Group B** Read about David.

Answer the questions about your person.

Check your answers with your group.

1 Where did he/she grow up?
2 What did he/she like doing as a child?
3 How did he/she become interested in the sport?
4 How does he/she feel when he/she does the sport?
5 How dangerous is the sport?
6 Does he/she teach the sport?
7 What did he/she do last year?
8 What are his/her future plans?

4 Work with a partner from the other group.

Compare Tanya and David, using your answers.

Speaking

5 **Group A** Make questions to ask David.

1 Why/like the countryside?
2 What/like doing at school?
3 What sport/invent?
4 What/do in Lisses?
5 What/do next?

**Group B** Make questions to ask Tanya.

1 What/like doing as a child?
2 When/join a diving class?
3 How long/can/swim underwater?
4 What record/break?
5 What/do next?

6 Work with a partner from the other group.

Interview each other.

---

Free-diving

As a child, Tanya Streeter always loved swimming in the sea – she grew up in the Cayman Islands in the Caribbean. She could always dive the deepest for seashells. But she didn’t know then that she could dive deeper than anyone else in the world.

Tanya discovered her diving abilities in 1997, when she joined a class in free-diving. Free-diving is a new sport. It’s very dangerous, because you dive with no oxygen. There were only men in the class and no one wanted to dive with her because she was a girl. But her class was surprised when they saw how long she could swim underwater. Her teachers immediately wanted to train her. A few months later, Tanya started breaking records. She can swim underwater for nearly six minutes with just one breath! Last year she broke the world free-diving record. She dived 121 metres with one breath.

She says: ‘At the bottom of the sea I’m calm. I love the peace and quiet down there. Coming up again is very difficult. You can’t think about the pain! I’m not planning to break any more records for a while. I’m going to wait and see if anyone breaks my last record! In the future I’m going to teach free-diving and work for sea-life conservation.’
Free-running

David Belle grew up in the countryside, and he always loved the feeling of freedom there. He liked running, jumping, and climbing trees in the woods when he was a child. At the age of nine, he and his family went to live in Lisses, a town outside Paris. But he continued to jump and climb there. He loved doing gymnastics at school.

As a teenager in 1989, David invented the sport of *Le Parkour* or ‘free-running’. The idea of *Le Parkour* is to find new and often dangerous ways to travel across the town. The runners or ‘traceurs’ work in groups. They run and jump over walls, roofs and buildings – everything! They try to move like cats. David and his friend Sebastian spent ten years in Lisses practising their moves and jumps and teaching other people. Last year they were on television for the first time. David says that *Le Parkour* is an art and a philosophy, not a sport. They are not trying to win medals. They just want to learn new moves and do them well. They like to feel free.

David says: ‘We do it because we need to move. We are going to take our art to the world and show people how to move. And we are going to go where no human ever went before.’
VOCABULARY AND SPEAKING

The weather

1 Match the words and symbols.

sunny  rainy  windy  snowy  cloudy  foggy

Which symbols can the following adjectives go with?

hot  warm  cold  cool  wet  dry

2 Listen and complete the answers.

A What's the weather like today?
B It's _______ and it's very _______.
A What was it like yesterday?
B Oh, it was _______ and _______.
A What's it going to be like tomorrow?
B I think it's going to be _______.

The question What ... like? asks for a description. What's the weather like? = Tell me about the weather.

Practise the questions and answers. Ask and answer about the weather where you are today, yesterday, and tomorrow.

3 Work with a partner. Find out about the weather round the world yesterday.
Student A Look at the information on this page.
Student B Go to p151.

Ask and answer questions to complete the information.

WORLD WEATHER

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CITY</th>
<th>S</th>
<th>C</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>Sn</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Athens</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>18</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Berlin</td>
<td>R</td>
<td></td>
<td>7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bombay</td>
<td></td>
<td>5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Edinburgh</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Geneva</td>
<td></td>
<td>5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hong Kong</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>29</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lisbon</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>London</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Los Angeles</td>
<td></td>
<td>5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luxor</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>40</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Milan</td>
<td></td>
<td>5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moscow</td>
<td>Sn</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oslo</td>
<td></td>
<td>5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

What was the weather like in Athens?
It was sunny and warm, 18 degrees.

4 Which city was the hottest? Which was the coldest? Which month do you think it is?
EVERYDAY ENGLISH

Making suggestions

1 Make a list of things you can do in good weather and things you can do in bad weather. Compare your list with a partner.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Good weather</th>
<th>Bad weather</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>go to the beach</td>
<td>watch TV</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 T 12.7 Read and listen to the beginning of two conversations. Complete B’s suggestions.

1 A It’s a lovely day! What shall we do?
   B Let’s ________!

2 A It’s raining again! What shall we do?
   B Let’s ________ and ________.

! 1 We use shall to ask for and make suggestions.
   What shall we do?
   Shall we go swimming? = I suggest that we go swimming.

2 We use Let’s to make a suggestion for everyone.
   Let’s go! = I suggest that we all go. (Let’s = Let us)
   Let’s have a pizza!

3 Continue the two conversations in exercise 2 with these lines. Put them in the correct order a–c.

   a Well, let’s go swimming.
   b OK. Which film do you want to see?
   c Oh no! It’s too hot to play tennis.
   d Oh no! We watched a DVD last night.
   e OK. I’ll get my swimming costume.
   f Well, let’s go to the cinema.

T 12.8 Listen and check.

Music of English

Practise the two conversations with your partner. Pay attention to stress and intonation.

4 Have more conversations suggesting what to do when the weather is good or bad. Use your lists of activities in exercise 1 to help you.

WRITING Writing a postcard p123
1 Match a question word with an answer.
2 Look at the answers. What do you think the story is?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>When . . . ?</th>
<th>Six.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Who . . . ?</td>
<td>Because I love him.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Which . . . ?</td>
<td>Some roses.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How . . . ?</td>
<td>€50.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How much . . . ?</td>
<td>The red ones.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How many . . . ?</td>
<td>By plane.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A QUIZ

Question words

1 Look at the pictures. Which stories do you know?
2 Work in groups and answer the questions in the quiz.
3 Listen and check your answers. Listen carefully to the intonation of the questions.
4 In groups, answer these questions.
   1 Which of the stories in the quiz do you like best?
   2 When you were a child, did you read a lot? Did your parents tell you stories? Which stories did you like best?
   3 Are there any famous stories from your country or culture?
**PRACTICE**

**Questions and answers**

1. Look at the question words in A and the answers in C. Choose the correct question from B.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A</th>
<th>B</th>
<th>C</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Where</td>
<td>did you buy?</td>
<td>To the shops.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When</td>
<td>did you go?</td>
<td>This morning.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Who</td>
<td>did you go with?</td>
<td>A friend from work.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How</td>
<td>did you in?</td>
<td>We drove.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Whose car</td>
<td>did you pay?</td>
<td>Joe’s.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Why</td>
<td></td>
<td>To buy some new clothes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What</td>
<td></td>
<td>A new jacket.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How many</td>
<td></td>
<td>Only one.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Which one</td>
<td></td>
<td>The black leather one.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How much</td>
<td></td>
<td>£180.99.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Listening and pronunciation**

2. **T 13.5** Tick (√) the sentence you hear.

- 1. Where do you want to go?
- 2. Why do you want to go?
- 3. How is she?
- 4. Who is she?
- 5. Where’s he staying?
- 6. Where’s she staying?
- 7. Why did they come?
- 8. Why didn’t they come?
- 9. How old was she?
- 10. How old is she?
- 11. Does he play the guitar?
- 12. Did he play the guitar?
- 13. Where did you go at the weekend?
- 14. Where do you go at the weekend?

**Asking about you**

3. Put the words in the correct order to make questions.

- 1. like learning do English you?
- 2. do you night what did last?
- 3. languages mother many does how your speak?
- 4. last go you shopping did when?
- 5. football which you do team support?
- 6. come car today school by you to did?
- 7. much do homework have you how?
- 8. usually who sit you do next class in to?
- 9. English want learn to you do why?

4. Work with a partner. Ask and answer the questions.
DO IT CAREFULLY!
Adjectives and adverbs

1 Are the words in italics adjectives or adverbs?
   1 Smoking is a bad habit. The team played badly and lost the match.
   2 Please listen carefully. Jane’s a careful driver.
   3 The homework was easy. Peter’s very good at tennis. He won the game easily.
   4 I know the Prime Minister well. My husband’s a good cook.
   5 It’s a hard life. Teachers work hard and don’t earn much money.

GRAMMAR SPOT

1 Look at these sentences.
   Lunch is a quick meal for many people. (quick = adjective. It describes a noun.)
   I ate my lunch quickly. (quickly = adverb. It describes a verb.)
2 How do we make regular adverbs? What happens when the adjective ends in -y?
3 There are two irregular adverbs in exercise 1. Find them.

   Grammar Reference 13.2 p146

2 Match the verbs and phrases with an adverb. Usually more than one answer is possible. Which are the irregular adverbs?

   get up slowly
   walk quietly
   work early
   run fluently
   speak carefully
   speak English easily
   pass the exam hard
   do your homework fast/quickly

PRACTICE
Order of adjectives/adverbs

1 Put the adjective in brackets in the correct place in the sentence. Where necessary, change the adjective to an adverb.
   1 We had a holiday in Spain, but unfortunately we had weather. (terrible)
   2 Maria dances. (good)
   3 When I saw the accident, I phoned the police. (immediate)
   4 Don’t worry. Justin is a driver. (careful)
   5 Jean-Pierre is a Frenchman. He loves food, wine, and rugby. (typical)
   6 Please speak. I can’t understand you. (slow)
   7 We had a test today. (easy)
   8 We all passed. (easy)
   9 You speak English. (good)

Telling a story

2 Complete these sentences in a suitable way.
   1 It started to rain. Fortunately …
   2 Ali invited me to his party. Unfortunately …
   3 I was fast asleep when suddenly …
   4 I saw a man with a gun outside the bank. Immediately …

3 T 13.6 Listen to a man describing what happened to him in the middle of the night. Number the adverbs in the order you hear them.

   ──── Noises in the night ────
   ──── quickly ────
   ──── quietly ────
   ──── slowly ────
   ──── immediately ────
   ──── carefully ────
   ──── suddenly ────
   ──── fortunately ────
   ──── really ────

4 Work with a partner and tell the story again. Use the order of the adverbs to help you.

Check it

5 Correct the mistake in each sentence.
   1 Where does live Anna’s sister?
   2 The children came into the classroom noisily.
   3 What means comb?
   4 I always work hardly.
   5 Do you can help me, please?
   6 When is going Peter on holiday?
   7 You did this exercise good.
VOCABULARY
Describing feelings

1 Match the feelings to the pictures.

bored  tired  worried  excited  annoyed  interested

2 Match the feelings and reasons to make sentences.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feelings</th>
<th>Reasons</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I am</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bored</td>
<td>I'm going on holiday tomorrow.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tired</td>
<td>we have a good teacher.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>worried</td>
<td>I worked very hard today.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>excited</td>
<td>I can't find my keys.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>annoyed</td>
<td>I have nothing to do.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interested</td>
<td>I want to go to the party but I can't.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3 Complete each sentence with the correct adjective.

1 excited
Life in New York is very ...
The football fans were very ...

2 tired
The marathon runners were very ...
That game of tennis was very ...

3 annoyed
The child's behaviour was really ...
The teacher was ... when nobody did the homework.

4 worried
The news is very ...
Everybody was very ... when they heard the news.

4 Answer your teacher's questions using adjectives from exercises 1 and 2.

Did you like doing exercise 2?
No, we didn't. It was very boring!

How did you feel?
Very bored!

Some adjectives can end in both -ed and -ing.
The book was interesting.
I was interested in the book.
The lesson was boring.
The students were bored.
A short story

1 Do you give presents at Christmas? What are some of the best/worst presents you have given or received?
2 Work with a partner. Look at the pictures. Where and when does the story take place? Who do you think the people are?
3 Read and listen to part one of the story.
4 Answer the questions.
   1 Where does Della live?
   2 Is she married?
   3 What’s her job?
   4 What time of year is it?
   5 What does she want to do for Jim?
   6 Why do you think she is going into town? What is she going to do?
   7 Which of these adjectives best describe Della? Why?

happy sad tired tiring worried worrying bored careful annoying excited angry

5 Read and listen to part two.
6 Answer the questions.
   1 Where did Della go? What did she do? Did you guess correctly?
   2 How much money does she have for Jim’s present?
   3 What does she buy for him? Why?
   4 What does she think of her hair now?
   5 What does Jim think of her hair? What do you think the problem is?
   6 What adjectives best describe Della in part two of the story? Why?

happy sad tired tiring worried worrying bored careful annoying excited angry surprised

7 How do you think the story is going to end? Discuss your ideas with the class.

Read part three on p104 and check your ideas.

One dollar and eighty-seven cents. That was all. Della carefully counted the money again. There was no mistake. Every day, when she went to the shops, she didn’t spend much money. She bought the cheapest meat and the cheapest vegetables. It was very tiring – she walked for hours around the shops to find the cheapest food. She saved every cent possible. Only one dollar and eighty-seven cents. The next day was Christmas, and she couldn’t do anything about it. So she sat there in her little room and cried quietly.

Della lived in this poor little room in New York with her husband, James Dillingham Young. James (Jim to his friends) was lucky because he had a job, but it wasn’t a good job. Times were bad and there was no work for Della. But when Jim came home, she immediately put her arms around him. And that was good.

Della wanted to buy Jim a Christmas present – something really good to show how much she loved him. Suddenly she ran to the mirror and looked at her beautiful long hair. Then she put on her old brown hat and coat and quickly went into town.
Part Two

She stopped when she came to a door with 'Madame Eloise – Hair' on it. Inside was a small fat woman. 'Do you buy hair?' Della asked.

'I buy hair,' Madame answered. 'Take your hat off, then, and show me your hair.' Madame slowly touched the hair with her hand. 'Twenty dollars,' she said.

'Quick! Cut it off! Give me the money!' Della said.

The next two hours went quickly. Della was happy, because she was at the shops with money for a present for Jim. At last she found him the perfect present. Jim had one special thing. He had a beautiful gold watch that once belonged to his father, and before that to his grandfather. Jim loved his watch, but it had no chain. When Della saw the gold watch chain, she knew immediately that it was right for Jim. It cost twenty-one dollars.

Della ran home excitedly with the eighty-seven cents. When she arrived, she looked at her very short hair in the mirror. 'Oh dear. I look like a schoolboy! What is Jim going to say when he sees me?'

At seven o'clock Jim came in. His eyes were on Della. She could not understand the look on his face. He was not angry or surprised. He just looked at her sadly.

'Della ran to him.

'Jim, don't look at me like that! I sold my hair because I wanted to give you a present.'

'You sold your hair?' he said quietly.

'Yes. I told you. But don't worry. It grows so fast. But don't you love me any more, Jim?'
Part Three

Suddenly Jim put his arms around Della. 'I love you, Della. It doesn't matter if your hair is long or short. But open this. Then you can see why I was unhappy at first.'

Della opened the present excitedly. Then she gave a little scream of happiness. But a second later there was a cry of unhappiness. There were the combs – for her beautiful hair. When she first saw these lovely, expensive combs in the shop window, she wanted them. And now they were hers. But she no longer had her hair! Della held them in her hand and her eyes were full of love.

Then Della remembered. She ran to get Jim’s present. 'Isn’t it lovely, Jim? Give me your beautiful watch, and let’s see it with its new chain!'

But Jim sat down and smiled. 'Della, you see. I sold the watch to buy your combs.'

And this was the story of two young people who were very much in love.

Language work

9 Answer the questions.
   1 What did Jim think of Della’s hair? What was his problem? Did you guess correctly?
   2 Does Della like her present?
   3 What’s the problem with Della’s present for Jim?
   4 Which of these do you think is the moral of the story?

   You don’t need to spend a lot of money on a nice present.
   Thinking carefully about a present is important.
   The best present of all is love.

10 Put some adjectives and adverbs from the story into the correct box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adjectives</th>
<th>Adverbs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

11 Write questions about the story using these question words. Ask and answer the questions across the class.

When did the story take place?
A long time ago, at Christmas.

Writing Writing a story p124
EVERYDAY ENGLISH
At the chemist’s

1 Match a word in the box with a picture. Write the words in the correct column.

---

**a** comb suncream aspirin shampoo
**b** deodorant plasters a toothbrush
**c** conditioner soap toothpaste

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Things for your hair</th>
<th>Things for your teeth</th>
<th>Things for your skin</th>
<th>Things for your health</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>c</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d</td>
<td>e</td>
<td>f</td>
<td>g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>h</td>
<td>i</td>
<td>j</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 **T 13.10** Listen and complete the conversation at the chemist’s.

---

A Hello. Can I help you?
B Yes, please. I’m not (1) ________ very well.
  I’m (2) ________ for some aspirin. (3) ________
  can I find them?
A Right here. What (4) ________ do you want?
  Small or (5) ________?
B Large, please. And I (6) ________ ________
  some shampoo, as well.
A What (7) ________ of shampoo? For dry hair?
  Normal hair?
B Um … for dry hair, please.
A There’s Sunsilk or Palmolive. (8) ________ one
  do you want?
B Sunsilk’s fine, thanks.
A (9) ________ else?
B No, that’s all. (10) ________ ________ is that?
A Four pounds twenty.
B (11) ________ you are.
A Ten pounds. Thank you. And here’s five pounds
  eighty (12) ________.
B Thanks. Bye.
A Bye-bye. Thank you very much.

---

**Music of English** 🎵

**T 13.10** Listen again. Practise the conversation with a partner, paying particular attention to stress and intonation.

---

3 With your partner, make more conversations in the chemist’s. Use the words in exercise 1.
**STARTER**

1. Match the countries and flags.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Country</th>
<th>Flag</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Australia</td>
<td>🇦🇺</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brazil</td>
<td>🇧🇷</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>France</td>
<td>🇫🇷</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Germany</td>
<td>🇩🇪</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Great Britain</td>
<td>🇬🇧</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Italy</td>
<td>🇮🇹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Japan</td>
<td>🇯🇵</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Canada</td>
<td>🇨🇦</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spain</td>
<td>🇪🇸</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the USA</td>
<td>🇺🇸</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Tick (✓) the countries that you have visited.

**IN MY LIFE**

Present Perfect + *ever* and *never*

1. **T 14.1** Listen to Steve and Ryan's conversation. What are they talking about? Who's Tara?

2. **T 14.2** Read and listen to Ryan's answers. Then listen and repeat.

   I've been to Paris. (I've = I have)
   I haven't been to Barcelona.
   I've been to Italy.
   I've never been to Venice.
   She's been to Mexico. (She's = She has)
   She hasn't been anywhere in Europe!

Work in groups. Look at the flags. Tell each other which countries you have or haven't been to. Have you been to any other countries?

3. **T 14.3** Read and listen to Tara and Steve's conversation. Practise with a partner.

   **T** Have you ever been to Barcelona?
   **S** No, I haven't.
   **T** Have you ever been to Paris?
   **S** Yes, I have.
   **T** When did you go?
   **S** Two years ago.
   **T** Did you like it?
   **S** Yes, it was beautiful.
4 Write down the names of four cities in your country or another country that you have been to. Have similar conversations with your partner.

5 Tell the class about your partner.

Maria’s been to Berlin. (Maria’s = Maria has)
She went there two years ago.

But she hasn’t been to Paris. / She’s never been to Paris.

(She’s = She has)

---

**GRAMMAR SPOT**

1 We use the Present Perfect to talk about experiences at some time in our lives.

Have you ever (at any time in your life) been to Paris?

2 We use the Past Simple to say exactly when something happened.

When did you go to Paris?

I went there two years ago.

in 1998.

3 We make the Present Perfect tense with has/have + the past participle. Complete the table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Negative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I You We They</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He She It</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4 Write ever and never in the right place in these sentences.

Has he ________ been to Barcelona?
He’s ________ been to Barcelona.

---

**PRACTICE**

**Past participles**

1 Here are the past participles of some verbs. Write the infinitive.

- eaten ________
- seen ________
- met ________
- drunk ________
- flown ________
- made ________
- taken ________
- ridden ________
- cooked ________
- bought ________

- given ________
- won ________
- had ________
- stayed ________

2 Which are the two regular verbs?

3 What are the Past Simple forms of the verbs?

4 Look at the list of irregular verbs on p158 and check your answers.
What has Ryan done?

1 **T 14.4** Listen to Ryan talking about his life and tick (✓) the things he has done.

- lived in a foreign country
- worked for a big company
- stayed in an expensive hotel
- flown in a jumbo jet
- cooked a meal for a lot of people
- met a famous person
- seen a play by Shakespeare
- ridden a motorbike
- been to hospital
- won a competition

2 Tell your teacher about Ryan and answer your teacher’s questions.

- He’s lived in a foreign country.
- Which country did he live in? Japan.
- How long did he live there? One year.

3 Ask your teacher the questions from exercise 1.

- Have you ever lived in a foreign country?
- Which country did you live in?

4 Ask a partner the questions. Tell the class about your partner.

A HONEYMOON IN VENICE

Present Perfect + yet and just

1 Ryan and Tara are on honeymoon in Venice. Before they went, they made a list of things they wanted to do there. Read the list below.

**VENICE**

Things to do...
- have a coffee in St Mark’s Square
- climb up the Bell Tower
- see the paintings in the Doge’s Palace
- go on a gondola
- have a boat ride along the Grand Canal
- walk across the Rialto Bridge
- visit the glass factories on Murano Island
- go to the beach at the Lido

2 **T 14.5** Tara is phoning her sister Amy back home in the USA. Listen to their conversation. Tick (✓) the things in the list she and Ryan have done.

**GRAMMAR SPOT**

1 Complete the sentences.
   1 Have you ________ on a gondola yet?
   2 We ________ climbed up the Bell Tower yet.
   3 We’ve just ________ a boat ride along the Grand Canal.

2 Where do we put yet in a sentence? Where do we put just in a sentence?

3 We can only use yet with two of the following. Which two?
   □ Positive sentences
   □ Questions
   □ Negative sentences

   Grammar Reference 14.2 p147

3 With a partner, talk about what Ryan and Tara have done and haven’t done yet.

- They’ve had a coffee in St Mark’s Square.
- They haven’t climbed up the Bell Tower yet.

**T 14.5** Listen again and check.
PRACTICE

I've just done it

1 Work with a partner. Make questions with yet and answers with just.

1 do the washing-up
2 do the shopping
3 wash your hair
4 clean the car
5 make the dinner
6 meet the new student
7 check your email
8 give your homework to the teacher
9 finish the exercise

Check it

2 Tick (✓) the correct sentence.
   1 □ I saw Ryan yesterday.
      □ I’ve seen Ryan yesterday.
   2 □ Did you ever eat Chinese food?
      □ Have you ever eaten Chinese food?
   3 □ Tara won £5,000 last month.
      □ Tara has won £5,000 last month.
   4 □ I’ve never drank champagne.
      □ I’ve never drunk champagne.
   5 □ Steve has ever been to America.
      □ Steve has never been to America.
   6 □ Has your sister yet had the baby?
      □ Has your sister had the baby yet?
   7 □ I haven’t done my homework yet.
      □ I’ve done my homework yet.
   8 □ Did she just bought a new car?
      □ Has she just bought a new car?
READING AND SPEAKING

We've never learnt to drive!

1 Work with a partner. Ask and answer the questions. Compare answers with the class.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Have you ever ...?</th>
<th>Never</th>
<th>Once or more</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>When? Where? Who with?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>... walked a long way</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>... cycled a long way</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>... ridden a motorbike</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>... hitch-hiked/ thumbed a lift</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>... ridden a horse</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>... ridden in a horse and cart</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 These words are in the texts. Translate them.

a gun    a hearse    a locust    a tornado

3 Look at the pictures and read the introductions. What have Tudor Bowen-Jones and Josie Dew never learnt to do? How do they travel?

4 Work in two groups.
   **Group A** Read about Tudor.
   **Group B** Read about Josie.

5 Answer the questions.
   1 Does he/she have a job?
   2 When did he/she start travelling?
   3 Which year did he/she go abroad for the first time?
   4 Does he/she always travel alone?
   5 How many countries has he/she been to?
   6 Has he/she been to Egypt?
   7 Has he/she been to the USA?
   8 Has he/she ever been frightened? What happened?
   9 Tell your partner three more interesting things that have happened to him/her.
   10 What is he/she going to do next?

6 Find a partner from the other group. Compare Tudor and Josie, using your answers.

**What do you think?**

- Would you like to travel like Tudor or Josie? Why/Why not?
- Do people cycle a lot or hitch-hike in your country? Why/Why not?
- What's your favourite way to travel? Why?
Tudor Bowen-Jones is going to spend his 90th birthday doing what he loves best – hitch-hiking.

Tudor, a retired teacher from South Wales, has spent 60 years hitch-hiking all over the world. He is now on his seventh passport, and wants to be in Vienna for his birthday. Tudor’s first journey abroad was to France and Belgium in 1947. Now he likes to make two or three journeys a year. But he has never learnt to drive.

Tudor says: ‘I started hitch-hiking round Britain in the 1940s when I didn’t have any money. It was the only way to travel. I’ve been to 40 countries, and I think it’s an excellent way to visit places and meet people. People are usually very surprised when I tell them what I am doing!’

His journeys have taken him across Europe, the Middle East, and America, and he has taken all kinds of interesting lifts. He has hitched-hiked with a horse and cart in Hungary, ridden a motorbike across Spain, sat in the back of a hearse in France, and enjoyed the comfort of a Rolls-Royce in Germany. The longest he has waited for a lift is twelve hours.

He has been to the Pyramids in Egypt, where the driver took out a gun. Tudor was frightened, but the driver cleaned the gun and put it back again! Tudor says that hitch-hiking is not dangerous, if you are careful.

He has made friends all over Europe. They come and visit him in his little home in Wales. ‘I’m always going to hitch-hike,’ Tudor says.

When Josie Dew was young, she fell out of a car, so she has never learnt to drive.

She was still at primary school when she decided she wanted to travel. So when she was eleven, she decided to go for long bike rides, and cycled 40 or 50 miles every day.

Josie says: ‘The only good thing about secondary school was cycling there and back. I left when I was 16. I love cooking, so I started a business. I cooked three-course meals, and delivered them by bike! In 1985, as soon as I had some money, I cycled to Africa and back.’

Josie has been to 40 countries and has had all kinds of interesting experiences. She has cycled through the Himalayan mountains in Nepal, then down into India. She has cycled through millions of locusts in the Moroccan desert. She has travelled through tornados in the USA. She was in Romania on Christmas Day in 1989 when President Ceauşescu was executed by the Government. And she hasn’t been to Egypt yet, because when she was in Turkey, a war started nearby. So she went to Greece instead.

She has sometimes travelled with friends, boyfriends and even her mother, but she has often cycled alone. She had only one really frightening experience – a man attacked her in Bulgaria.

In 1997 she hurt her knee very badly, so she started writing books about her journeys. She’s written five books, and now she’s on her bike again! At the moment she’s planning to cycle around New Zealand.
LISTENING AND VOCABULARY

All around the world

1 **T 14.6** Close your books and listen to a song by Lisa Stansfield. What is the song about? Who is her 'baby'? What does _gonna_ mean?

2 Match the words in **bold** with their meanings. Use a dictionary, if necessary.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>We had a quarrel.</th>
<th>He was really angry.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>He gave a reason.</td>
<td>We disagreed/fought.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He was so mad.</td>
<td>He explained it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I lied to him.</td>
<td>I did nothing with my time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I wasted time.</td>
<td>I didn't tell him the truth.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3 **T 14.6** Read the words of the song. Can you complete any of the lines? Listen to the song again and write the words you hear.

What do you think?
- Make a list of your favourite English songs.
- Compare your list with a partner.

---

**Chorus**

I've ________ around the world and I
I can't ________ my baby
I don't know when, I don't know ________
Why he's ________ away
And I don't know ________ he can be, my baby
But I'm gonna find ________

We had a quarrel and I let myself go
I said so ________ things, things he didn't know
And I was oh so ________
And I don't think he's ________ back

He gave the reason, the reasons he should ________
And he said so many things he's never said ________
And he was oh so mad
And I don't ________ he's coming, coming back
I did too much lying, wasted too ________ time
Now I'm ________ crying.

Chorus

So open-hearted, he never did me ________
I was the one, the weakest one of ________
And now I'm oh so ________
And I don't ________ he's coming back, coming back
I did too much lying, wasted too much time
Now I'm ________ crying.

Chorus

I've ________ around the world ________ for my baby
______ around the world and I'm gonna
I'm gonna find ________
EVERYDAY ENGLISH

At the airport

1 What do you do at an airport? Read the sentences and put them in the correct order.

- You wait in the departure lounge.
- You board the plane.
- You get a trolley for your luggage.
- You arrive at the airport.
- You check your luggage and get a boarding pass.
- You go through passport control.
- You check the departures board for your gate number.

2 T 14.7 Listen to the airport announcements and complete the chart.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Departures</th>
<th>Destination</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BA 516</td>
<td>GENEVA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SK</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AF</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LH</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gate</th>
<th>Remark</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>LAST CALL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>DELAYED</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>NOW BOARDING</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>NOW BOARDING</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>WAIT IN LOUNGE</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3 T 14.8 Listen to the conversations. Who are the people? What are they doing?

- meeting people
- checking in luggage
- waiting in the departure lounge
- saying goodbye

4 Complete each conversation with the correct question.

When can we see each other again?

Did you have a good honeymoon?

A Listen!... BA 516 to Geneva. That's our flight.
B ________?
A I couldn't hear.
B I think it said 4.
A OK. Come on! Let's go.

A Can I have your ticket, please?
B Yes, of course.
A Thank you. How many suitcases have you got?
B Just one.
A And ________?
B Just this bag.
A That's fine.
B Oh... can I have a seat next to the window?
A Yes, that's OK. Here's your boarding pass. Have a nice flight!

A Ryan! Tara! Over here!
B Hi! Amy! Great to see you!
A It's great to see you too. You look terrific!
B Fantastic. Everything was fantastic.
A Well, you haven't missed anything here. Nothing much has happened at all!

A There's my flight. It's time to go.
B Oh no! It's been a wonderful two weeks. I can't believe it's over.
A I know.
B Soon, I hope. I'll email every day.
A I'll phone too. Goodbye, my darling. Give my love to your family.
B Goodbye, Lukas.

T 14.8 Listen again and check.

Music of English

Work with a partner. Choose a conversation from exercise 4. Learn it by heart. Pay attention to stress and intonation. Act it to the class.

WRITING Writing an email – Saying thank you p125

SONG Summertime
Teacher's Book p153
UNIT 3 NATURAL WRITING  Using pronouns

1 Underline the pronouns and possessive adjectives in these sentences.
1 She likes my brother and he likes her.
2 Our mother works hard. Her job is interesting.
3 We listen to our teachers. They help us.

2 Complete the table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject pronouns</th>
<th>Object pronouns</th>
<th>Possessive adjectives</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>me</td>
<td>my</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he</td>
<td>him</td>
<td>his</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>her</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it</td>
<td>it</td>
<td>its</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we</td>
<td>us</td>
<td>their</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3 Complete the sentences with the correct pronoun.
1 My sister has a new car, but __she__ doesn't drive __it__.
2 Luc has two sons. ________ plays football with ________ in his free time.
3 That's my dictionary. Can I have ________ back, please?
4 Irma's new teacher is Mr Banks. ________ likes ________ a lot.
5 Rosa and I are good students. ________ like our teacher Estella and she likes ________.
6 Our teacher gives ________ a lot of homework.
7 Kate knows Joanna, but Maria doesn't know ________ at all.
8 Mike buys a newspaper every day. ________ reads ________ on the train.
9 Look! This is a photo of ________ with my family.
10 Sally lives near Paul and Sue. ________ goes to work with ________ every day in their car.

4 Read about István's family.
Who is István? Who is in the photo?

5 The text is not very natural. Which nouns can you replace with pronouns or possessive adjectives? Underline them.

István’s family

István Kis is Hungarian, but István lives in the USA because István is married to an American. István is a music professor. István likes his job because his job is interesting, and István loves playing in concerts. István travels around the world to play, but István's wife, Stacey, doesn't go with István because Stacey doesn't like travelling.

István and Stacey have a nine-year-old daughter. István and Stacey's daughter's name is Mary-Jane. Mary-Jane goes to school, and Mary-Jane also plays the piano every day. Mary-Jane wants to be a pianist, too, and travel with Mary-Jane's father. Stacey doesn't want to go with István and Mary-Jane. When István and Mary-Jane travel round the world, Stacey says she wants a dog!

6 Work with a partner and rewrite the text to make it more natural. Begin like this.

István Kis is Hungarian, but he lives in the USA ...
UNIT 4 INFORMAL LETTERS  To a penfriend

1 Do you have friends from different countries? Who? Where from? Talk to a partner.

2 Read Becky’s letter to her penfriend, Tiago.
   • Where is she?  • Where is he?  • What does Becky write about?

Dear Tiago,

Thank you for your address in Brazil! My name’s Becky and I’m nineteen years old. I’m a language student at Brighton University. I live in a house near the centre of Brighton with my mother and father, my brother James, and my Polish friend Danka.

I speak French, Spanish and a little German, but I don’t speak Portuguese. Sorry! My favourite subject at university is Spanish, but I don’t like German.

I like listening to music and swimming. At weekends I go out with my friends. Sometimes we go to the cinema and sometimes we go to a café or a nightclub.

What about you? What do you do in Brazil? Please write to me.

Best wishes,

Becky

20 Holland Street,
Brighton BN2 2WB
5 April

We begin all letters with Dear ...

We end letters to a friend with Best wishes. We use Love if we know the person very well.

3 Read the letter again.
   • How does it begin and end?
   • What is the date?
   • What is Becky’s address?
   • What is the postcode?
   • Do you write addresses in the same way?

4 Write a similar letter to a penfriend about you.

Tiago Costa
Rua Bellavista 118
Fortaleza
Brazil
UNIT 5 DESCRIBING WHERE YOU LIVE Linking words – and, so, but, because

1 Join A, B and C to make sentences.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A</th>
<th>B</th>
<th>C</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I like New York</td>
<td>and</td>
<td>I don't like Los Angeles.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>so</td>
<td>it's an exciting city.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>but</td>
<td>I go there a lot.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>because</td>
<td>I like Chicago.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 Write similar sentences about where you live. Start I like/don't like (your town) …

3 Complete the sentences with and, so, but, or because.

1 In my bedroom there's a television __ and __ a DVD player.
2 We live on the top floor, __ we don't have a garden.
3 I like living here __ it's near the shops.
4 I like Mexican food, __ my husband doesn't like it.
5 We both like sailing, __ we live near the sea.
6 London is expensive, __ I like it.

4 Read about Suzie's new flat. Complete the text with one of the linking words in exercise 1.

Where I live

I live in a new flat near the centre of Oxford. It's very small (1) _______ it's lovely! There's a sunny living room, a kitchen, a bedroom (2) _______ a bathroom. The living room has a big window (3) _______ a nice comfortable sofa in front of it. There isn't a very big garden, (4) _______ there is a park at the end of the road, (5) _______ in summer I often go there to read or sunbathe.

I live alone with my cat, Marmalade. (6) _______ I never feel lonely (7) _______ I have a lot of visitors. My friends come to see me a lot, (8) _______ we sometimes watch a film or cook a meal.

I love my flat for many reasons: the sunny living room, the good times with friends, (9) _______ best of all (10) _______ it is my first home.

5 Make notes about where you live. Use these questions.

- Where is it?
- How many rooms are there?
- What is near your home?
- Is it old or new?
- Who do you live with?
- Do you like it? What do you like best of all?

Talk to a partner about your notes.

6 Write a description of your home.
UNIT 6 FORMAL LETTERS  Applying for a job

1 Read the advertisement for a job. What is the job? Where is it?

THE OXFORD INTERNATIONAL SCHOOL wants a receptionist
- Do you like working with people?
- Can you speak two foreign languages?
- Can you use a computer?
- Do you know Oxford well?

Please write to: Anne Watson, Director
The Oxford International School
16 College Street, Oxford OX2 7PT
or email: awatson@oxfordint.co.uk

2 Carol is interested in the job. Read the information about her. Do you think she is the right person for the job?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Carol Barnes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Age</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Address</td>
<td>4 Hope Road, Oxford OX6 5PP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present job</td>
<td>Tourist guide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Last job</td>
<td>Hotel receptionist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Languages</td>
<td>French, Spanish</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3 Look at Carol’s letter and complete it with the information from her chart.

Anne Watson, Director
The Oxford International School
16 College Street
Oxford OX2 7PT

19 August

Dear Ms Watson,

I am interested in the job of (3)_________ in your school.

I (4)_________ years old and I (5)_________ in Oxford. At the moment
I (6)_________ guide, but last year I (7)_________ a hotel receptionist.
I (8)_________ working with people very much and I (9)_________ speak
two (10)_________, French and a little Spanish. I can also (11)_________ a
computer. I (12)_________ born in Oxford, so I know it very well.

I look forward to hearing from you.

Yours sincerely,
Carol Barnes

Paragraph 1
Introduction

Paragraph 2
The main part of the letter

Paragraph 3
Ending

4 Read this advertisement for another job. What is the job? Answer the questions about you. Now write a similar letter to Carol’s.

Happy Holidays want TOURIST GUIDES
- Are you over 18?
- Do you like talking to people?
- Do you know your town well?
- Can you speak English?
- Are you free from July to September?

Please write to: Peter Mann, Happy Holidays, Central Office, 89 Brook Street, LONDON W1 5PW
UNIT 7  DESCRIBING A HOLIDAY

1 Read the information about Robert and Daniella. Make notes about your last holiday.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Questions</th>
<th>Robert</th>
<th>Daniella</th>
<th>Me</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Where/go?</td>
<td>Wales</td>
<td>Japan</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When/go?</td>
<td>last June</td>
<td>last October</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How long/stay?</td>
<td>a week</td>
<td>three weeks</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How/travel?</td>
<td>train</td>
<td>plane</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Where/stay?</td>
<td>a bed and breakfast</td>
<td></td>
<td>with friends</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What/do?</td>
<td>went walking in the countryside</td>
<td>visited Tokyo and Kyoto</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What/see?</td>
<td>some beautiful mountains and rivers; not any people!</td>
<td>some beautiful temples; not Mount Fuji</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enjoy the holiday?</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 Ask and answer the questions about Robert with a partner.

Where did he go?  To Wales.
How long did he stay? For a week.

3 Complete the questions about Daniella and write short answers.

1 Where _______ did she go?  To Japan.
2 When _______?  
3 How long _______?  
4 How _______?  
5 Where _______?  
6 What _______?  
7 What _______?  
8 Did _______?  Yes, she did.

4 Read about Daniella's holiday. Put the verbs in the Past Simple.

My exciting holiday

Last October I (1) _______ (have) a very exciting holiday.
I (2) _______ (go) to Japan for three weeks to stay with friends.
I (3) _______ (travel) by plane. It (4) _______ (be) a long journey but fortunately my friends
(5) _______ (meet) me at the airport and (6) _______ (drive) me straight to their house near
Tokyo. I (7) _______ (stay) with my friends for the first week. In the second week I (8) _______
(visit) Tokyo and then in the third week I (9) _______ (take) the train to Kyoto where I (10)
________ (see) some beautiful temples and gardens. I (11) _______ (enjoy) the holiday very much
indeed but I (12) _______ (not see) Mount Fuji. Next time I want to climb it with my friends.

5 Talk to a partner about your last holiday. Then write about it.
UNIT 8 WRITING ABOUT A FRIEND  Linking words – because, when, until

1 Make sentences with a line in A, a word in B, and a line in C.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A</th>
<th>B</th>
<th>C</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 I left the party early</td>
<td>a she was thirty.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Peter couldn’t speak</td>
<td>b they came for dinner.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 Tim didn’t see the Colosseum</td>
<td>c I was at school.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 Eva didn’t start learning English</td>
<td>d she couldn’t afford them.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 I didn’t enjoy maths lessons</td>
<td>e after midnight.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 Sally didn’t buy the red shoes</td>
<td>f he was nearly four.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 They didn’t go to bed</td>
<td>g I didn’t feel well.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 We met Ken’s wife last Saturday</td>
<td>h he was in Rome.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 Write notes about an old friend. Use these questions to help.
- What is his/her name?
- How often do you meet now?
- Where did you meet?
- What do you do when you meet?
- What did you do together?

Talk to a partner about your notes.

3 Read the text about ‘My oldest friend.’ Complete the text with words from the box.

and but because so when until

My oldest friend

My oldest friend is called Sandy. We met thirty years ago (1) ______ we were both five years old. It was my first day at school (2) ______ I was very unhappy (3) ______ I wanted my mother. Sandy gave me a sweet (4) ______ we became friends immediately. We were together nearly every day (5) ______ we left school twelve years later.

Then I went to university, (6) ______ Sandy didn’t. She married (7) ______ she was just eighteen (8) ______ had three children. I studied for eight years (9) ______ I wanted to be an accountant. I had a lot of new friends, (10) ______ I didn’t see Sandy very often. Sometimes we didn’t meet for months, (11) ______ we often talked on the telephone.

Now I’m married, too. I live near Sandy (12) ______ we meet every week. She’s a student now, (13) ______ I have a baby, (14) ______ we can give each other a lot of advice!

4 Write about your friend. Use your notes to help.
UNIT 9 FILLING IN FORMS  Booking a hotel

1  Read the email.
   • Who is it from?
   • Who is it to?
   • What is it about?
   • How does it begin and end?

2  These lines are from the email. Where do they go?
   a. Could you tell me what time the restaurant closes?
   b. I look forward to hearing from you.
   c. Could I possibly have a quiet room at the back of the hotel?

   Dear Sir or Madam,
   I would like to book a single room at your hotel for the nights of 12, 13, and 14 April. (1) ____________
   I understand you have a restaurant. (2) ____________
   My details are: 15 Monarch Road, London, NW1 2TS. Tel: (0207) 566 4945. Please let me know if you need a deposit or a credit card number.
   Thank you very much. (3) ____________
   Yours faithfully,
   Peter West

3  Look at the hotel’s online booking form. Complete the form with information about Peter West in exercise 1.

4  Write an email to book a room at the hotel.
   • Book a double room for four nights next month.
   • Ask for a room with a view of the sea.
   • Ask about Internet and other facilities (phone, television, room service, car parking etc.).
   • Give your personal details.
UNIT 10 DESCRIBING A PLACE  Linking words – which, where

We can use which and where to join sentences.
We use which for things:
This is the book. It has the information.
This is the book which has the information.
We use where for places:
There’s the house. John and Mary live in it.
There’s the house where John and Mary live.

1 Join the sentences with which or where.

1 Jack wrote the letter. It arrived this morning.
   ____________________________

2 There’s the park. We play football in it.
   ____________________________

3 This is the hotel. I always stay here.
   ____________________________

4 Barbara’s got a car. It’s faster than yours.
   ____________________________

2 What is your capital city? What do you know about it? Talk to a partner.

3 Read about London and complete the text using the words in the box.

   a where the Queen lives
   b which is the biggest
   c which are much bigger
   d where the Romans landed
   e where you can buy anything
   f where you can see

   London has a population of about 7,000,000. It lies on the River Thames, (1)_________ nearly 2,000 years ago. From about 1800 until World War II, London was the biggest city in the world, but now there are many cities (2)_________.

   London is famous for many things. Tourists come from all over the world to visit its historic buildings, such as Buckingham Palace, (3)_________, and the Houses of Parliament, (4)_________ and hear the famous clock, Big Ben. They also come to visit its theatres, its museums, and its many shops, such as Harrods, (5)_________. And, of course, they want to ride on the big wheel next to the river!

   Like many big cities, London has problems with traffic and pollution. Over 1,000,000 people a day use the London Underground, but there are still too many cars on the streets. The air isn’t clean, but it is cleaner than it was 100 years ago.

   For me, the best thing about London is the parks. There are five in the city centre. But my children’s favourite place is Hamleys, (6)_________ toy shop in the world!

4 Write four paragraphs about your capital city. Begin each paragraph with the same words as in the text about London. Write 100–150 words.

   Paragraph 1 How big is it? Where is it?
   Paragraph 2 What is it famous for?
   Paragraph 3 Does it have any problems?
   Paragraph 4 What do you like best about it?
UNIT 11 DESCRIBING PEOPLE  Linking words – although, but

These two sentences have the same meaning. How are they different? Which is more formal?
I like him a lot, but I don’t love him.
Although I like him a lot, I don’t love him.

1 Complete the sentences with a word from the box.
although because but too both for example

1 My father loves skiing, _________ my mother hates it.
2 We stopped playing tennis _________ it started to rain.
3 _________ it was cold and wet, we still played tennis.
4 My two sisters are very similar. They _________ love dancing and skiing.
5 Rosa loves dancing and Hannah loves it _________.
6 There’s so much to do at the weekend. _________ you can go skiing or swimming.

2 Complete the text with the correct linking word from exercise 1.

3 Work with a partner. Talk about your brothers, sisters, parents, or children. Are you/they similar? Do you/they like doing the same things?

4 Write about two people in your family and compare them. Describe …
• what they look like
• their likes and dislikes
• their personalities

My brother and sister

I have a brother Ben, and a sister Ana. They are a lot younger than me, and (1) although they are twins they don’t look similar at all. Ben has got red hair, (2) Ana’s hair is blond. They (3) have blue eyes, (4) Ben is much taller than Ana. They are interested in different things (5) . (6) Ben likes numbers and letters, but Ana prefers painting and drawing.

(7) they are so different, there are still some things that they (8) like doing. (9) , they love coming into my room and playing with my things, (10) they think my things are much more interesting than theirs!

(11) they are sometimes really noisy and annoying, I love them very much (12) they are so funny.
UNIT 12 WRITING A POSTCARD

1 Discuss these questions with a partner.
   - Do you often receive postcards? Who from? Where from? Give examples.
   - What was the last postcard you sent? Who to? Where from?

2 Read the postcard. Find words for good weather and bad weather.

3 Underline the descriptions for a good holiday or a bad holiday. Read your postcard to your partner.

Friday, April 14th
Dear Mum and Dad,

We're having a wonderful time here in Corsica, quite a good and fortunately the weather is glorious, not very good. They say that the weather here in April is often quite changeable,

so we're just unlucky, very lucky. It is warm and sunny, cold and cloudy, nearly every day so most of the time we stay in the hotel and go to the beach, and play cards, swim and sunbathe. Yesterday it was so hot, foggy, that we couldn't see the sea, lie in the sun. Tomorrow we're not going to the beach, we're going to drive round the island and go sightseeing.

See you soon.
Love, Lara and Mick

Mr and Mrs Binchey
20 Model Farm Road
Cork City
Ireland

4 Write a postcard to a friend. Write about ...
   - where you are on holiday
   - the weather
   - something you do often
   - something you did yesterday
   - something you are going to do tomorrow

Corsica
UNIT 13 WRITING A STORY Using adjectives and adverbs

1. Do you know the story of *The Emperor’s New Clothes*? Discuss what you know.

2. Read the story and complete it with the adjectives and adverbs from the box. Use each word once only.

3. What stories do you know that begin *Once upon a time* ...? Which is your favourite? Discuss as a class.

4. Write your favourite story. Use adjectives and adverbs. Begin: *Once upon a time* ... End: ... and they lived happily ever after.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adjectives</th>
<th>Adverbs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>expensive</td>
<td>angrily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beautiful</td>
<td>immediately</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>embarrassed</td>
<td>loudly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>naked</td>
<td>naturally</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>new</td>
<td>quickly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pleased</td>
<td>suddenly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wonderful</td>
<td>unfortunately</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>worried</td>
<td>unhappily</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The Emperor’s New Clothes

*Once upon a time* there was an Emperor who loved to spend his money on **expensive** clothes. One day, two tailors arrived at his palace. They said they could make him the most **expensive** suit, with magic cloth that only clever people could see. ‘What a **beautiful** suit to have,’ thought the Emperor. ‘I’ll know **embarrassed** who is clever and who is stupid in my palace.’

The Emperor gave the tailors a lot of money and a room in the palace. He was very excited, but he was also **naked**. ‘Oh dear’ he thought, ‘I hope I can see the magic cloth.’ He sent one of his ministers to look first.

The minister went into the tailors’ room. ‘Oh no! I can’t see anything,’ he thought **angrily**. ‘What can I say to the Emperor?’

‘Well?’ said one tailor. ‘Do you like the suit?’

‘Oh, it is excellent!’ he said.

‘We’re very **pleased** to hear that,’ said the tailors. The minister told the Emperor and the Emperor was delighted. He went to the tailors’ room with his minister.

‘Look,’ said the minister. ‘Aren’t the colours lovely?’ **embarrassed** the poor Emperor couldn’t see anything at all, but he said ‘Oh yes, the suit is **wonderful**. Thank you.’

**nervously** everybody wanted to see the suit, so the Emperor put on his **wonderful** clothes and went into the city with his ministers. All the people clapped and cheered **annoyingly**. The Emperor felt better.

Then **angrily** a little boy ran out. ‘The Emperor isn’t wearing any clothes!’ he shouted.

‘Oh, it’s true!’ the people said. ‘He’s as **unfortunately** as the day he was born!’

The Emperor was so **worried**. He ran **nervously** back to the palace and called **angrily** for the tailors but they were gone.
UNIT 14 WRITING AN EMAIL  

Saying thank you

1 Have you ever been to another country to study the language? Where did you go? How long for? What language did you study? Did you have a good time?

2 Do you remember Danka who went to study English in Brighton? Look quickly at the email.
   - Where is Danka now?
   - Where are they?
   - Who is Jacek?
   - Who is she writing to?
   - Why is she writing?

3 Read the email again and complete it with the words from the box. Check with a partner.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>lot</th>
<th>going x2</th>
<th>couldn't</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>visit</td>
<td>just</td>
<td>has</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quickly</td>
<td>much</td>
<td>but</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>had</td>
<td>like</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Dear Becky and family,

I have (1) _______ arrived back in Poland. It's lovely to see my family again (2) _______. I miss you and all my friends in Brighton.
I (3) _______ a wonderful time with you and your family. I enjoyed myself very (4) _______. Indeed. Also, it was very kind of you to show me so much of England. I loved (5) _______ to London, and I'll never forget visiting Buckingham Palace and Big Ben.

I think that my English (6) _______ improved quite a (7) _______. At first I was so worried because I (8) _______ understand a word. You all spoke so (9) _______, but soon I began to understand more and more.

My brother, Jacek, is (10) _______ to England next month. Can he come to see you? He'd (11) _______ to very much. I hope that one day you can (12) _______ me in Poland. I would love to show you Warsaw.

Love to you all,
Danka

4 Write a similar email to someone who you have stayed with.
UNIT 1

T 1.1 see p6

T 1.2
A Hello. My name's Lisa. What's your name?
B Mike.
A Where are you from, Mike?
B I'm from Boston. Where are you from?
A I'm from Boston, too!

T 1.3
1 This is Marco. He's from Italy.
2 This is Emma. She's from England.
3 This is Lisa and Mike. They're from the USA.

T 1.4 see p8

T 1.5
1 He's from Spain.
2 What's her name?
3 They're from Japan.
4 Where's she from?
5 He's a teacher in Italy.

T 1.6 see p9

T 1.7
Tiago
My name's Tiago Costa and I'm a student. I'm 18. I'm not married. I have one sister and two brothers. I live in a house in Fortaleza, Brazil. I want to learn English because it's an international language.

T 1.8
The alphabet song
ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ
That is the English alphabet!

T 1.9 see p10

T 1.10 see p11

T 1.11
1 My brother has four children.
2 I have 10 stamps in my bag.
3 Hello, extension 4177.
4 I live at number 19.
5 Goodbye. See you at five.
6 Hello. 01913 786 499!

T 1.12
1 A Hello, Lisa Jefferson.
B Hello, Lisa. It's Mike.
A Mike! How are you?
B I'm fine, thank you. And you?
A I'm OK, thanks.
2 A Bye, Marco! Have a nice day!
B Thanks, and you. See you later!
A Yes, at 7.00 at the cinema.
B Great! Bye, Emma!

T 1.13 see p11

UNIT 2

T 2.1
1 A What's her surname?
B Jefferson.
2 A What's her first name?
B Lisa.
3 A Where's she from?
B The USA.
4 A What's her job?
B She's a journalist.
5 A What's her address?
B 89, Franklin Street, Cambridge, Boston
6 A What's her phone number?
B (617) 326 1204.
7 A How old is she?
B Twenty-six.
8 A Is she married?
B No, she isn't.

T 2.2
1 A What's his surname?
B Jefferson.
2 A What's his first name?
B Rudi. That's R-U-D-I.
3 A Where's he from?
B The USA.
4 A What's his job?
B He's an actor.
5 A What's his address?
B 82, Beacon Street, Boston. That's Beacon, B-E-A-C-O-N Street, Boston.
6 A What's his phone number?
B (617) 227 5930.
7 A How old is he?
B Twenty-eight.
8 A Is he married?
B No, he isn't.

T 2.3 see p13

T 2.4 see p14

T 2.5
1 It's small. It's big.
2 It's easy. It's difficult.
3 He's old. She's young.
4 They're old. They're new.
5 It's lovely. It's horrible.
6 It's fast. It's slow.
7 They're hot. They're cold.
8 It's cheap. It's expensive.

T 2.6 see p17

T 2.7
D=Danka, K=Klaus
1 D Hello. My name's Danka.
K Hello, Danka. I'm Klaus.
D Where are you from, Klaus?
K I'm from Germany, from Hamburg. And you? Where are you from?
D I'm from Poland.
K From Warsaw?
D Yes, that's right.

S=Simon, C=Class, D=Danka
2 S Good morning everybody.
C Good morning, Simon.
S How are you all?
C Fine. Good. OK.
S How are you Danka?
D I'm fine, thank you. And you?
S Very well. Now listen everybody ...

B=Becky, D=Danka, V=Valerie
3 B Bye, Danka. Have a nice day.
D Pardon?
B Have a good day at the language school.
D Ah, yes. Thank you.
B What's your teacher called?
D My teacher called?
V What's his name?
D Oh, yes. His name's Simon.
B And is he good?
D My teacher good?
V Yes, Simon, your teacher, is he a good teacher?
D Oh yes, yes. Very good, very nice.

T 2.8 see p18

T 2.9
1 That's five pounds fifty, please.
2 Look, it's only twelve pounds.
3 Here you are. Twenty p change.
4 Pizza is three pounds seventy-five.
5 One hundred pounds for that is very expensive.
6 Nine pounds fifteen, not nine pounds fifty.

T 2.10 see p18

T 2.11
1 A Good morning.
B Good morning. Can I have a coffee, please?
A Here you are. Anything else?
B No, thanks.
A One pound fifty, please.
B Thanks.
A Thank you.

2 A Hi. Can I help?
B Yes. Can I have a tuna and egg salad, please?
A Anything to drink?
B Yeah. A mineral water, please.
A OK. Here you are.
B How much is that?
A Six pounds thirty-five, please.
B Thanks.

T 2.12 see p19
UNIT 3

T 3.1 see p20 & 21

T 3.2

is works likes
comes speaks flies
lives has loves

T 3.3

1 István's a music professor. Pamela's a doctor.
2 He comes from Hungary. She comes from Canada.
3 He lives in a big city, but she lives in a small town.
4 He works four days a week. She works 16 hours a day non-stop.
5 He speaks three languages. She speaks to sick people on her radio.
6 He loves his job and she loves her job, too.
7 He has a daughter. She isn't married.
8 He likes playing tennis in his free time. She never has free time.

T 3.4

1 A Where does István come from?
   B Budapest, in Hungary.
2 A What does he do?
   B He's a music professor.
3 A Does he speak German?
   B Yes, he does.
4 A Does he speak Spanish?
   B No, he doesn't. He doesn't speak Spanish or French.

T 3.5 see p22

T 3.6

A Where does Pamela come from?
   B Canada.
2 A What does she do?
   B She's a doctor.
3 A Does she live in Canada?
   B No, she doesn't.
4 A Does she like her job?
   B Yes, she does.

T 3.7

Iman

1 Iman comes from Somalia.
2 Iman lives and works in Somalia.
3 She's a tourist guide.
4 She speaks five languages.
5 She likes playing tennis in her free time.
6 She isn't married.

Giorgio

7 Giorgio works in an office in London.
8 He is Italian.
9 He has three sons.
10 He likes relaxing with his family in his free time.

T 3.8

1 She likes her job.
2 She loves walking.
3 He isn't married.
4 Does he have three children?
5 What does he do?

T 3.9

1 A Good afternoon. Can I have two ice-creams, please?
   B Chocolate or vanilla?
   A One chocolate, one vanilla, please.
   B That's one pound eighty. Anything else?
   A No, thank you.
2 A Only two letters for you this morning, Mrs Craig.
   B Thank you very much, Mr McSparran. And how's Mrs McSparran this morning?
   A Oh, she's very well, thank you. She's busy in the shop.
3 A A glass of wine before bed, my dear?
   B Oh, yes please.
   A Here you are.
   B Thank you, my dear. I'm very tired this evening.
4 A Hello, Mr McSparran.
   B Good morning, boys and girls. Hurry up, we're late.
   A Can I sit here, Mr McSparran?
   B No, no, I want to sit there.
   B Be quiet all of you, and SIT DOWN!

T 3.10 see p26

T 3.11 see p27

T 3.12

It's five o'clock. It's eight o'clock.
It's half past five. It's half past eleven.
It's quarter past five. It's quarter past two.
It's quarter to six. It's quarter to nine.
It's five past five. It's ten past five.
It's twenty past five. It's twenty-five past five.
It's twenty-five to six. It's twenty to six.
It's ten to six. It's five to six.

T 3.13 see p27

UNIT 4

T 4.1

Ceri is 28 years old and lives in Cardiff, Wales. She works hard as a lawyer from Monday to Friday, but she doesn't relax at weekends. She plays rugby for the Women's Welsh Rugby team. On Saturdays she trains with her team at the Rugby Club, and on Sundays she plays in a match. She has no free time, but she loves her job and playing rugby.

T 4.2

I love my job as a family lawyer, because I like helping people. But I love playing rugby, too, so my life is very busy! Every lunchtime I go running in the park near my office. On Monday and Thursday evenings I go to the swimming pool with my boyfriend Alex. On Tuesday and Friday mornings I get up at 5.30 and go to the gym before work. And on Wednesday evenings I train with my team at the club. On Friday evenings I just relax because I'm usually very tired. I sometimes visit my sister. She lives in the centre of Cardiff, too. Or I cook a nice dinner at home with Alex. We love cooking. After dinner we often watch a DVD. We never go out on Saturday evenings, because I always play in a match on Sundays. I want our team to win the next World Cup!

T 4.3

Q=Question, C=Ceri

Q Where do you work?
   C In Cardiff.
Q Do you like your work?
   C Yes, I do.
Q Do you relax at weekends?
   C No, I don’t.
Q Why don’t you relax at weekends?
   C Because I play rugby.

T 4.4

1 A What time do you go to bed?
   B At eleven o'clock.
2 A Where do you go on holiday?
   B To Spain or Portugal.
3 A What do you do on Sundays?
   B I always relax.
4 A When do you do your homework?
   B After dinner.
5 A Who do you live with?
   B My mother and sisters.
6 A Why do you like your job?
   B Because it’s interesting.
7 A How do you travel to school?
   B By bus.
8 A Do you go out on Friday evenings?
   B Yes, I do sometimes.

T 4.5

1 What does she do on Sundays?
2 Do you stay at home on Thursday evenings?
3 He lives here.
4 What do you do on Saturday evenings?
5 I read a lot.
6 Why don’t you like your job?

T 4.6 see p32 & 33

Tapescripts 3.1-4.6 127
UNIT 5

T 5.1
A 1 Is there a television?
B Yes, there is.
A 2 Is there a computer?
B No, there isn’t.
A 3 Are there any books?
B Yes, there are.
A 4 How many books are there?
B There are a lot.
A 5 Are there any pictures?
B No, there aren’t.

T 5.2
What’s in your picture?
There are three people in the living room. A man and a woman on the sofa and a little girl in the armchair. There’s a radio on the coffee table and a rug under it. There’s a cat on the rug in front of the fire. There are a lot of pictures on the walls but there aren’t any photographs. There are two plants on the floor next to the television and some flowers on the small table next to the sofa.

Suzie’s kitchen
S = Suzie, M = Matt
S And this is the kitchen.
M It’s very nice.
S Well, it’s not very big, but there are a lot of cupboards. And there’s a new fridge, and a cooker. That’s new, too.
M What’s in all these cupboards?
S Well, not a lot. There are some cups, but there aren’t any plates. And I have some knives and forks, but I don’t have any spoons!
M Do you have any glasses?
S No. Sorry.
M Never mind. We can drink this champagne from those cups! Cheers!

T 5.4
Yoshi’s briefcase
What’s in my briefcase? Well, there’s a newspaper – a Japanese newspaper – and there’s a dictionary – my Japanese/English dictionary. I have some pens, three, I think. Also I have a notebook for vocabulary. I write words in that every day. And of course I have my keys – my car keys and my house keys. Oh yes, very important, there are some photos of my family, my wife, and my daughter. And there’s my mobile. I phone home to Tokyo every night. That’s all, I think. I don’t have any stamps and my address book is in my hotel.

T 5.5
Homes around the world
Candy and Bert from New England
C Our house is quite old, about fifty years old.
A It’s in the centre of the village near the church. All the houses here are white. We have a living room, quite a big kitchen and three bedrooms, and a big verandah all around the house.
B Our children aren’t at home now. They both have jobs in the city, so most of the time it’s just Candy and me.
UNIT 6

T 6.1  see p44

T 6.2  see p44

T 6.3
1 I can speak French, but I can't speak German.
2 He can't dance, but he can sing.
3 'Can you cook?' 'Yes, I can.'
4 They can ski, but they can't swim.
5 We can dance and we can sing.
6 'Can she drive?' 'No, she can't.'

T 6.4
Lucia
Well, there are a lot of things I can't do. I can't drive a car, of course, I'm only 14. Languages? Well, I can't speak French, but I can speak Spanish. My mother's Spanish, and we often go to Spain. My mum's a really good cook. She can cook really well, not just Spanish food, all kinds of food, but I can't cook at all. I just love eating! What about sports? Er ... I think I'm good at quite a lot of sports. I can play tennis, and I can ski. Sometimes we go skiing in the Spanish Pyrenees. And of course I can swim. But musical instruments – no – I can't play any at all. But I can dance! I dance flamenco with my mum sometimes. I love it. And I can use a computer, of course. All my friends can.

T 6.5  see p46

T 6.6  see p46

T 6.7
E=Emma, M=Marco
E Were you at Charlotte's party last Saturday?
M Yes, I was.
E Was it good?
M Well, it was OK.
E Were there many people?
M Yes, there were.
E Was Pascal there?
M No, he wasn't. And where were you? Why weren't you there?
E Oh ... I couldn't go because I was at Sergio's party! It was brilliant!
M Oh!

T 6.8
1 I can hear you, but I can't see you.
2 There are three bedrooms in our house.
3 I don't know where Jill lives.
4 My son lives near the sea.
5 Don't wear that hat, buy a new one!
6 No, I can't come to your party.
7 You were right. Sally can't come for dinner.
8 Their daughter could write when she was three.
9 I know my answers are right.

T 6.9
Operator
International Directory Enquiries. Which country, please?
... And which town?
... Can I have the last name, please?
... And the initial?
... What's the address?
... The number you require is 00 1 616 326 1204.

T 6.10
1 A Hello.
   B Hello. Can I speak to Jo, please?
   A This is Jo.
   B Oh! Hi, Jo. This is Nicola. Is Sunday still OK for tennis?
   A Yes. That's fine.
   B Great! I'll see you on Sunday at ten, then. Bye!
   A Bye!
2 A Hello.
   B Hello. Is that Emma?
   A No it isn't. I'll just get her.
   C Hello, Emma here.
   B Hi, Emma. It's Marco. Listen! There's a party at my house on Saturday. Can you come?
   C Oh sorry, Marco. I can't. It's my sister's wedding.
   B Oh, never mind. Perhaps next time. Bye!
   C Bye!
3 A Good morning. Dixons Electrical. How can I help you?
   B Good morning. Can I speak to the manager, please?
   A I'm afraid Mr Smith isn't in his office at the moment. Can I take a message?
   B Don't worry, I'll ring back later.
   A All right. Goodbye.
   B Goodbye.

T 6.11  see p51

UNIT 7

T 7.1
A Shirley Temple Black
Shirley Temple Black is a retired politician. She lives with her husband in California. She likes cooking and playing with her grandchildren. Also, she sometimes works at Stanford University for the Institute of International Studies. She goes there every month and meets foreign ministers. They discuss world problems.

T 7.2  see p52

T 7.3
liked  studied
looked  acted
worked  decided
earned  wanted
loved  started

T 7.4
C Why did she stop acting?
From the age of three Shirley worked very hard for 20th Century Fox.
'I acted in three or four movies every year. Fortunately I liked acting!' And the public loved her and her films. The films earned over $35 million. She says, 'I didn't go to school. I studied at the studio and my mother looked after me there.' So why did she stop acting? When she was 12, she finally started school. She was a good student and she wanted to go to university. She was still a good actor, but her films weren't so popular, because she wasn't a little girl any more. She decided to change her career. It was a big change – from actor to politician. She says, 'I was a politician for 35 years, but people only remember my movies!'

T 7.5
1 A When did she start in films?
   B When she was only three years old!
2 A How many films did she act in?
   B Over 50.
3 A Who did she work for?
   B 20th Century Fox Film Studios.
4 A How much money did her films earn?
   B Over $35 million.
5 A Where did she study?
   B At the film studio. She didn't go to school.
6 A When did she start school?
   B When she was 12.
7 A What did she want to do?
   B Go to university.
8 A Why did she stop acting?
   B Because her movies weren't so popular any more.

T 7.6  see p34

T 7.7
wanted  danced
loved  retired
acted  earned
looked  liked
T 7.8

was
died
began
became
came
won
got
made
sang
bought
left
sold
had

T 7.9

1984 The year I was born
J = James, D = Dad, M = Mum

J Dad, tell me about when I was born. When did you leave Hong Kong?
D Erm ... you were born in January, and we left later that year and came back to Britain.
M Yes, you got a job in London, didn't you, Robert?
D That's right. Remember Margaret Thatcher was Prime Minister, then.
M Of course. She was Europe's first woman Prime Minister, James.
J I know that, Mum. But who was in the White House?
D Ronald Reagan. Actually, he began his second four years then?
M He was an actor before. Did you know that, James?
J No, I didn't, Mum!
D And that was the year that the Soviet leader, Yuri Andropov, died.
M Oh, yes. He was only leader for a year. Oh, and I remember -- the Soviet Union didn't go to the Olympic Games that year. Isn't that right, Robert? The 1984 Games -- were they in Los Angeles?
D Yes, they were. Remember Carl Lewis won four gold medals that year.
J That was in athletics, wasn't it?
M That's right.
D Oh, and remember little Tiger Woods?
J The golfer?
D Yes. He became junior champion that year. He was only eight years old.
J Wow. Hey, 1984 was a busy year. Did anything else happen?
M Well ... Apple Macintosh made a new computer. I remember because I bought one. Millions of people bought one.
J And what about music? Was Michael Jackson famous then?
D Yes, he was. His album Thriller came out that year. It sold millions.
J 43 million, actually. It's the best-selling album of all time!
D Really?
M Oh, and remember, Robert? Madonna sang Holiday! (sings)
J Oh, no! Stop it, Mum! You sing that every time we go on holiday!
M I know. I like it. Anyway, who else was famous, then, Robert?
D Let's see. Paul McCartney ... Tina Turner, David Bowie -- they all had hit records that year.
J Wow, that's amazing! They're all still famous today.

T 7.10

orange juice
railway station
swimming pool
handbag
boyfriend
newspaper
film star
birthday card
washing machine
living room
car park

T 7.11

1 A I can't find my handbag.
B Here it is!
A Oh yes, thank you. Where did you find it?
B In the living room where you left it!
2 A Would you like some chocolate cake?
B No, thanks, just orange juice for me.
A But I made this cake for you.
B Did you? I'm sorry! I don't like chocolate cake.
3 A I have nothing to wear for your boyfriend's party.
B What about your white jeans?
A They aren't clean.
B Well, wash them. You have a washing machine, don't you?
4 A Do you want anything from the shops?
B A newspaper, please. The Times, I think.
A OK.
B Oh, and can you take this letter to the post office?
A Sure.

T 7.12

first
second
third
fourth
fifth
sixth
tenth
twelfth
thirteenth
sixteenth
seventeenth
twentieth
thirty-first

T 7.13

1 The first of April
2 The second of March
3 The seventeenth of September
4 The nineteenth of November
5 The twenty-third of June
6 The twenty-ninth of February, nineteen seventy-six
7 The nineteenth of December, nineteen eighty-three
8 The third of October, nineteen ninety-nine
9 The thirty-first of May, two thousand
10 The fifteenth of July, two thousand and seven

T 7.14

1 The fourth of January
2 May the seventh, 1997
3 The fifteenth of August, 2001
4 A It was a Friday.
B No, it wasn't. It was a Thursday.
A No, I remember. It was Friday the thirteenth. The thirteenth of July.
5 A Oh no! I forgot your birthday.
B It doesn't matter, really.
A It was last Sunday, wasn't it? The thirtieth, November the thirtieth.
6 A Hey! Did you know that Shakespeare was born and died on the same day?
B That's not possible!
A Yes, it is. He was born on April the twenty-third, fifteen sixty-four and he died on April the twenty-third, sixteen sixteen.

UNIT 8

T 8.1

The photograph
Louis Daguerre from France
Louis Daguerre was a painter for the French opera. But he wanted to make a new type of picture. So he started his experiments in the 1820s. Twelve years later he invented the photograph. He sold his idea to the French government in 1839 and the government gave it to the world. Daguerre called the first photographs 'daguerreotypes'. They became popular very fast. By 1850, there were 70 daguerreotype studios in New York City.

The windscreen wiper
Mary Anderson from the USA
Mary Anderson often visited New York City by car. In winter she noticed that when it rained or snowed, drivers got out of their cars all the time to clean their windows. In 1903 she began designing something to clean windows from inside the car. People, especially men, laughed at her idea. But they didn't laugh for long. She invented the windscreen wiper in 1905. And by 1916 all American cars had them.

The bicycle
Kirkpatrick Macmillan from Scotland
Long ago in 1490, Leonardo da Vinci drew a design for the modern bicycle. But the first person to make a bicycle was Kirkpatrick Macmillan in 1839. He lived in Scotland, so people didn't hear about his invention for a long time. Twenty years later, another bicycle came from France. In 1895 the bike became cheap and everyone could have one. Now people, especially women, could travel to the next town. It helped them find someone to marry!

T 8.2

1 He didn't invent the bicycle. He invented the photograph.
2 He didn't give his idea to the French government. He sold it to them.
3 She didn't live in New York City. She often visited New York City.
4 All cars didn't have windscreen wipers by 1916. Only American cars had them.
5 Leonardo da Vinci didn't make the first bicycle. Kirkpatrick Macmillan made it.
6 He didn't come from France. He came from Scotland.

T 8.3 see p62

T 8.4

My very first love
C Carly, N Ned
C I first met Ned when I was just ten years old. He was sixteen, er, very good-looking, and of course he had a girlfriend ... a really beautiful girlfriend. I hated her.
N Hmm. I can remember Carly when she was only ten. She played in the street. She played on the corner near my house. I was sixteen. I had a girlfriend – she didn't like you, did she, Carly?
C Hmm, no ... because she knew I liked you!! You married her, didn't you? Four years later ... I was fourteen, I cried and cried ... I remember it well.
N Yeah – I was only twenty, I wasn't ready. It was a big mistake – a big mistake.
C You moved to London and had Michelle, your daughter.
N Yeah – my little Michelle, she's great ...
C Yeah, she's lovely ... And I finished school and then I went to college. I didn't marry ... I had one or two boyfriends but nobody special. And two or three years later, my brother had a party. He invited you, and you came ... And when I saw you, all the old feelings came back, and you told me you were divorced ...
N Yeah, I was divorced and at my parents' house again. You were twenty-one, and just ... wonderful. And we just fell in love.
C Yes, that's what happened. That was three years ago – now I'm twenty-four, we're married and we have a new baby, and Michelle is with us too. I'm so lucky ... I married my very first love.

Do mothers know best?
E Eric, L Lori
E Our story is easy. We didn't do anything. It was our mothers who did it all!
L Yes. You see, our mothers are friends. They met one summer by the lake. They both have little summer houses there. And, of course, they talked a lot about their children.
E ... and they decided that they wanted us to meet.
L We both thought this wasn't a very good idea!
E When my mom said to me 'I know a nice girl for you,' I just thought, 'No way.'
L Me, too! You see, my mom did this a lot, and it was usually terrible.
E But we finally said 'OK' – just for some peace.
L I took my sister with me ... E ... and I took my best friend, Steve.
L But I was so surprised! Eric was wonderful!

T 8.5 see p64

Song: Teacher's Book p144

T 8.6

1 born 4 answer
2 bought 5 cupboard
3 world 6 Christmas

T 8.7 see p64

T 8.8

1 Happy birthday to you.
   Happy birthday to you.
   Happy birthday, dear Grandma,
   Happy birthday to you.

2 A Did you get any Valentine cards?
   B Yes, I did. Listen to this.
      "Roses are red, Violets are blue."
      "You are my Valentine"
      "And I love you."
   A Wow! Do you know who it's from?
   B No idea!

3 A Wake up, Mummy! Happy Mother's Day!
   B Thank you, darling. Oh, what beautiful flowers, and a cup of tea!
   A And I made you a card! Look!
   B It's lovely. What a clever boy!

4 A Congratulations!
   B Thank you very much!
   A When's the big day?
   B Pardon?
   A When's your wedding day?
   B The 26th June. Didn't you get your invitation?

5 A It's midnight! Happy New Year everybody!
   B Happy New Year!
   C Happy New Year!

6 A Thank goodness! It's Friday!
   B Yeah. Have a nice weekend!
   A Same to you.

7 A Ugh! Work again. I hate Monday mornings!
   B Me, too. Did you have a good weekend?
   A Yes, I did. It was great.

T 9.1

D = Daisy, P = Piers
D Mmm, I love apple juice. Do you like it Piers?
P No – it's disgusting. I like cola, ... and I love beer.
D Yuck! You don't! You don't drink beer!
P Yes, I do. Sometimes my dad gives me some of his beer – and I love it.
D Well, that's different ... My dad drinks coffee – I don't like coffee at all. But my mum drinks tea and I love tea – with lots of milk and sugar.
P No, I don't like tea or coffee, just cola – oh and orange juice. It's funny – I like orange juice, but I don't like oranges. I don't like fruit very much at all. Except bananas – I quite like bananas.
D Really? I like all fruit – apples, oranges, bananas, and I love strawberries. And ... what about vegetables, do you like them?
P No – I don't eat vegetables.
D I don't like hamburgers – my favourite dinner is fish and chips with peas.
P Fish – yuk! Peas – yuk!
D I like vegetables – especially carrots and peas, oh and tomatoes. Hey, are tomatoes fruit or vegetable?
P I don't know. Anyway, I don't like tomatoes – except on pizza or with pasta and cheese. I love pizza and pasta.
D Me too.
P Anyway, I know your favourite food.
D No, you don't!
P Yes, I do. It's chocolate – all girls like chocolate!
D Boys like chocolate too! You eat all those chocolate biscuits at my house last week.
P They were biscuits. That's different. Anyway – you eat more than me ...
D No, I didn't!
P Yes, you did!
D Didn't!
P Did!

T 9.2 see p67

T 9.3

1 Would you like a ham sandwich?
   No, thanks. I'm not hungry.
2 Do you like Ella?
   Yes. She's very nice.
3 Would you like a cold drink?
   Yes, cola, please.
4 Can I help you?
   Yes. I'd like some stamps, please.
5 What sports do you do?
   Well, I like swimming very much.
6 Excuse me, are you ready to order?
   Yes. I'd like a steak, please.
1 Good afternoon. Can I help you?
2 Who's your favourite writer?
3 What would you like for your birthday?
4 Do you like animals?
5 Here's the wine list, sir.
6 Have some ice-cream with your strawberries.

T 9.5
1 A Good afternoon. Can I help you?
B Yes, I'd like some fruit, please.
2 A Who's your favourite writer?
B I like books by John Grisham.
3 A What would you like for your birthday?
B I'd like a new bike.
4 A Do you like animals?
B I like cats, but I don't like dogs.
5 A Here's the wine list, sir.
B We'd like a bottle of Italian red wine.
6 A Have some ice-cream with your strawberries.
B No, thanks. I don't like ice-cream.

T 9.7
My favourite national food
Anke
One dish that is very famous in my country is 'sachertorte'. It is a kind of chocolate cake and you eat it with cream. I love it! The famous Café Sacher is in the centre of Vienna. They say a chef called Franz Sacher invented it there. When I am in Vienna, I always go to Café Sacher for some of their cake and a nice black coffee.

Graham
Now in my job, I travel the world, and I like all kinds of food ... but my favourite, my favourite is ... er ... I always have it as soon as I come home ... is a full English breakfast. Bacon, eggs, sausage, mushrooms, tomatoes, and of course, toast. I love it, not every day, but when I'm at home we have it every Sunday. Mmmm! I'd like it right now. Delicious.

Sergio
We love eating in my country! One of my favourite national dishes is called 'bruschetta'. This is actually toast, but you make it with special bread. You can eat it with a lot of things, but my favourite bruschetta has tomatoes, garlic, and olive oil on it. In my town there is a 'bruschettaria'. This is a small cafe - selling only toast! It's my favourite place to go.

Madalena
One kind of food that my country is very famous for is meat, especially beef. Everybody eats a lot of meat here. My family eats beef three or four times a week. There are a lot of different beef dishes, but my favourite is 'bife de chorizo'. This is a big steak! My mum cooks it with tomatoes and chilli. Delicious!

T 9.8
1 Would you like some more rice?
Yes, please. It's delicious.
2 Could you pass the salt, please?
Yes, of course. Here you are.
3 Could I have a glass of water, please?
Do you want sparkling or still?
4 Does anybody want more wine?
Yes, please. I'd love some.
5 How would you like your coffee?
Black, no sugar, please.
6 This is delicious! Can you give me the recipe?
Yes, of course. I'm glad you like it.
7 Do you want help with the washing-up?
No, of course not. We have a dishwasher.

T 9.10
1 A Can I have a cheese sandwich, please?
B Yes, of course. That's £1.75.
2 A Could you tell me the time, please?
B It's just after ten.
3 A Can you take me to the station, please?
B Jump in.

4 A Can I see the menu, please?
B Here you are. And would you like a drink to start?
5 A Could you lend me some money, please?
B Not again! How much would you like this time?
6 A Can you help me with my homework, please?
B What is it? French? I can't speak a word of French.
7 A Can I borrow your dictionary, please?
B Yes, if I can find it. I think it's in my bag.
T 10.5
1 That house is very big.
   Yes, it's the biggest house in the village.
2 The Ritz is a very expensive hotel.
   Yes, it's the most expensive hotel in London.
3 Appleton is a very pretty village.
   Yes, it's the prettiest village in England.
4 New York is a very cosmopolitan city.
   Yes, it's the most cosmopolitan city in the world.
5 Brad Pitt is a very popular film star.
   Yes, he's the most popular film star in America.
6 Miss Smith is a very funny teacher.
   Yes, she's the funniest teacher in our school.
7 Anna is a very intelligent student.
   Yes, she's the most intelligent student in the class.
8 This is a very easy exercise.
   Yes, it's the easiest exercise in the book.

T 10.6 see p77

T 10.7
Musical excerpts: flamenco; tango; salsa

T 10.8
1 Everest is the highest mountain in the world.
2 The Golden Gate Bridge in San Francisco is the longest bridge in the USA.
3 The Caspian Sea isn't a sea, it's the largest lake in the world.
4 Rotterdam is the busiest port in Europe.
   Ships from all over the world stop there.
5 The Empire State Building in New York was the tallest building in the world for over 40 years.
6 A church is much smaller than a cathedral.

T 10.9
wood  village
farm  cottage
factory  church
field  building
theatre

T 10.10
J = Joel, A = Andy
J So how do I find your cottage, then?
A Have you got a pen and paper?
J Erm ... yes, I have.
A OK. Well, leave the A34 at Apple Cross. Turn left at the traffic lights. Then go down the hill, and under the first bridge. OK? Then go over the second bridge, and along the road by the river. Go past the pub, and turn right up the hill. Go round the corner past the farm, and my cottage is on the right. It's easy!
J OK. Got that. See you tomorrow afternoon!
A Bye. Safe journey. Oh, don't forget your surfboard!

T 10.11
J = Joel, A = Andy
A Look at you! What happened? Where's your car?
J I had a small problem ...
A What? How?
J Well, I did what you said. I drove down the hill, under the first bridge, and over the second bridge, then I drove along the road by the river, past the pub, and up the hill. Next I drove round the corner, but I saw some big cows in front of me. So I turned quickly, drove off the road through some apple trees, and into a lot of mud.
A Oh no! Are you all right?
J I'm fine. But now I can't move the car. Come and help me.
A Of course. But why didn't you just stop?
J Well, there were a lot of cows and they didn't look very friendly.
A But cows aren't dangerous.
J OK, OK! ... I still don't like the countryside very much ...

T 11.1
Who's at the party?
O=Oliver, M=Monica
O Oh dear, Monica! I don't know any of these people. Who are they?
M Don't worry, Oliver. They're all very nice. Can you see that man over there? He's sitting down. That's Harry. He's a musician. He works in LA.
O Sorry, where?
M You know, L.A. Los Angeles.
O Oh, yeah.
M And he's talking to Mandy. She's wearing a red dress. She's very nice and very rich! She lives in a beautiful old house in the country.
O Rich, eh?
M Yes. Rich and married! Next to her is Fiona. She's drinking a glass of red wine. Fiona's my oldest friend, she and I were at school together.
O And what does Fiona do?
M She's a writer. She writes children's stories — they're not very good but ... anyway, she's talking to George. He's laughing and smoking a cigar. He's a pilot. He travels the world, thousands of miles every week.
O And who are those two over there? They're dancing. Mmmm. They know each other very well.
M Oh, that's Roz and Sam. They're married. They live in the flat upstairs.
O So ... um ... that's Harry and Mandy and um ... it's no good, I can't remember all those names.

T 11.2
1 A Whose is the baseball cap?
   B It's his.
2 A Whose are the boots?
   B They're hers.
3 A Whose is the baby?
   B It's theirs.

T 11.3
1 Who's on the phone?
2 I'm going to the pub. Who's coming?
3 Wow! Look at that sports car. Whose is it?
4 Whose dictionary is this? It's not mine.
5 There are books all over the floor. Whose are they?
6 Who's the most intelligent in our class?
7 Who's got my book?
8 Do you know whose jacket this is?

T 11.4
A Whose is this tennis racket?
   B It's mine.
A What's it doing here?
B I'm playing tennis this afternoon.

T 11.5
1 A Whose are these football boots?
   B They're John's. He's playing football later.
2 A Whose are these ballet shoes?
   B They're Mary's. She's going dancing tonight.
3 A Whose is this suitcase?
   B It's mine. I'm going on holiday tomorrow.
4 A Whose is this coat?
   B It's Jane's. She's going for a walk soon.
5 A Whose is this plane ticket?
   B It's Jo's. She's flying to Rome this afternoon.
6 A Whose are all these glasses?
   B They're ours. We're having a party tonight.

T 11.6
Flying without wings
Everybody's looking for that something
One thing that makes it all complete
You find it in the strangest places
Places you never knew it could be
Some find it in the faces of their children
Some find it in their lover's eyes
Who can deny the joy it brings
When you find that special thing
You're flying without wings
Some find it sharing every morning
Some in their solitary lives
You find it in the words of others
A simple line can make you laugh or cry
You find it in the deepest friendship
The kind you cherish all your life
And when you know how much that means
You've found that special thing
You're flying without wings
So impossible as it may seem
You've got to fight for every dream
'Cause who's to know which one you let go
Would have made you complete
Well, for me it's waking up beside you
To watch the sunrise on your face
To know that I can say I love you
At any given time or place
It's little things that only I know
Those are the things that make you mine
And it's like flying without wings
'Cause you're my special thing
I'm flying without wings
You're the place my life begins
And you'll be where it ends
I'm flying without wings
And that's the joy you bring
I'm flying without wings
I’m going to travel all over the world, then I’m going to write a book about my adventures. I want to call it ‘Life begins at 60!’ In my book, I’m going to tell other retired people to try new things, too. You are only as old as you feel!

UNIT 13

Storytime quiz
1 When did Shakespeare die?
   a In the 17th century
   b In the 21st century
2 What happens at the end of Romeo and Juliet?
   a They both die. They kill themselves.
   b They are reconciled.
3 How many dwarfs are there in Snow White?
   a 7
   b 9
4 How much money do Hansel and Gretel’s parents have?
   a None
   b 1000 silver coins
5 How long does Sleeping Beauty sleep?
   a 100 years
   b 10 years
6 Who does Cinderella marry?
   a The handsome Prince
   b The footman
7 Who created Mickey Mouse?
   a Walt Disney
   b George Herriman
8 Where did Hans Christian Andersen come from?
   a Denmark
   b Norway
9 What nationality are Don Quixote and Sancho Panza?
   a Spanish
   b French
10 Whose lamp is magic?
    a Aladdin’s
    b Jasmine’s
11 Why does Pinocchio’s nose grow long?
    a Because he tells lies.
    b Because he eats too much.
12 What kind of animal is Walt Disney’s Dumbo?
    a An elephant
    b A lion
13 Which city does Sherlock Holmes live in?
    a London
    b New York
14 How old is Harry Potter in the first story?
    a 11
    b 15

UNIT 12

Future plans
Jack
When I grow up I’m going to be a footballer – a really good one. I’m in the school team and I play three times a week. But I’m going to train very hard, every day, so I can be really, really good. First I’m going to play for Manchester United, then Inter Milan, and then Real Madrid. Those are my favourite teams. I’m going to travel all over the world and I’m going to be famous. I’m not going to marry until I’m very old – about 25. Then I want to have two sons. I’m going to play football until I’m 35 – that’s a very long time. And I’m going to teach my sons to play. I want them to be famous footballers, too!

Danny Carrick
When I retire next year … I’m going to retire early … I’m not going to stay at home and watch TV. I’m going to try lots of new things. First I want to go mountain-climbing. In fact, I want to climb Mount Everest, so I’m going to train very hard for that. I’m going to learn to scuba-dive, too, because I want to go scuba-diving in Australia. There are so many things I want to do!

UNIT 11

T 11.7 see p88

SA Can I help you?
   C Yes, please. I’m looking for a shirt to go with my new jeans.
   SA What colour are you looking for?
   C Blue.
   SA What about this one? Do you like this?
   C No, it isn’t the right blue.
   SA Well, what about this one? It’s a bit darker blue.
   C Oh yes. I like that one much better. Can I try it on?
   SA Yes, of course. The changing rooms are over there.

   ... Is the size OK?
   C No, it’s a bit too big. Have you got a smaller size?
   SA That’s the last blue one we’ve got, I’m afraid.
   But we’ve got it in green.
   C OK, I’ll take the green. How much is it?
   SA £39.99. How do you want to pay?
   C Can I pay by credit card?
   SA Credit card’s fine. Thank you very much.

Song: Teacher’s Book p149

UNIT 10

T 10.10 see p88

Diphthongs
1 /e/ red said
2 /æ/ hat that
3 /ə/ lit kissed
4 /iː/ green mean
5 /aː/ park dark
6 /æu/ whose shoes
7 /e/ short bought

T 12.2 see p90

T 12.3
1 A Why is he going to train very hard?
   B Because he wants to be a footballer.
2 A How long is he going to play football?
   B Until he’s 35.
3 A When is he going to marry?
   B Not until he’s very old – about 25!
4 A How many children is he going to have?
   B Two.
5 A Who is he going to teach to play?
   B His sons.

T 12.4
1 Take an umbrella. It’s going to rain.
2 Look at the time! You’re going to be late for the meeting.
3 Anna’s running very fast. She’s going to win the race.
4 Look! Jack’s on the wall. He’s going to fall.
5 Look at that man! He’s going to jump.
6 They’re going to have a baby. It’s due next month.
7 There’s my sister and her boyfriend! They’re going to kiss.
8 A Oh dear. I’m going to sneeze.
    Aaahhshoooh!
   B Bless you!

T 12.5 see p92

T 12.6
A What’s the weather like today?
B It’s snowy and it’s very cold.
A What was it like yesterday?
B Oh, it was cold and cloudy.
A What’s it going to be like tomorrow?
B I think it’s going to be warmer.

T 12.7
1 A It’s a lovely day! What shall we do?
   B Let’s play tennis!
2 A It’s raining again! What shall we do?
   B Let’s stay at home and watch a DVD.

T 12.8
1 A It’s a lovely day! What shall we do?
   B Let’s play tennis!
   A Oh no! It’s too hot to play tennis.
   B Well, let’s go swimming.
   A OK. I’ll get my swimming costume.
2 A It’s raining again! What shall we do?
   B Let’s stay at home and watch a DVD.
   A Oh no! We watched a DVD last night.
   B Well, let’s go to the cinema.
   A OK. Which film do you want to see?

T 13.1
1 A What’s she wearing?
   B Jeans.
   A Is she wearing jeans?
   B Yes, she is.
   C No, she isn’t.
2 A Where does she work?
   B In a bank.
   A Does she work in a bank?
   B Yes, she does.
   C No, she doesn’t.
3 A When’s he leaving?
   B Tomorrow.
   A Is he leaving tomorrow?
   B Yes, he is.
   C No, he isn’t.
4 A Who did you visit?
   B My aunt.
   A Did you visit your aunt?
   B Yes, I did.
   C No, I didn’t.
5 A How did you come?
   B By taxi.
   A Did you come by taxi?
   B Yes, we did.
   C No, we didn’t.
6 A Why are they going to have a party?
   B Because it’s her birthday. (sample answer)
   A Are they going to have a party?
   B Yes, they are.
   C No, they aren’t.

T 13.2 see p99

T 13.3
1 A What’s she wearing?
   B Jeans.
   A Is she wearing jeans?
   B Yes, she is.
   C No, she isn’t.
2 A Where does she work?
   B In a bank.
   A Does she work in a bank?
   B Yes, she does.
   C No, she doesn’t.
3 A When’s he leaving?
   B Tomorrow.
   A Is he leaving tomorrow?
   B Yes, he is.
   C No, he isn’t.
4 A Who did you visit?
   B My aunt.
   A Did you visit your aunt?
   B Yes, I did.
   C No, I didn’t.
5 A How did you come?
   B By taxi.
   A Did you come by taxi?
   B Yes, we did.
   C No, we didn’t.
6 A Why are they going to have a party?
   B Because it’s her birthday. (sample answer)
   A Are they going to have a party?
   B Yes, they are.
   C No, they aren’t.
UNIT 14

T 14.4
A Where did you go?
B To the shops.
A When did you go?
B This morning.
A Who did you go with?
B A friend from work.
A How did you go?
B We drove.
A Whose car did you go in?
B Joe’s.
A Why did you go?
B To buy some new clothes.
A What did you buy?
B A new jacket.
A How many did you buy?
B Only one.
A Which one did you buy?
B The black leather one.
A How much did you pay?
B £180.99.

T 13.5
1 Why do you want to go?
2 Who is she?
3 Where’s he staying?
4 Why didn’t they come?
5 How old was she?
6 Does he play the guitar?
7 Where did you go at the weekend?

T 13.6
Noises in the night
It was about two o’clock in the morning, and … suddenly I woke up. I heard a noise. I got out of bed and went slowly downstairs. There was a light on in the living room. I listened carefully. I could hear two men speaking very quietly. ‘Burglars!’ I thought. ‘Two burglars!’ Immediately I ran back upstairs and phoned the police. I was really frightened. Fortunately the police arrived quickly. They opened the front door and went into the living room. Then they came upstairs to find me. ‘It’s all right now, sir,’ they explained. ‘We turned the television off for you!’

T 13.7 see p102
T 13.8 see p103
T 13.9 see p104

T 13.10
A Hello. Can I help you?
B Yes, please. I’m not feeling very well. I’m looking for some aspirin. Where can I find them?
A Right here. What size do you want? Small or large?
B Large, please. And I’d like some shampoo, as well.
A What kind of shampoo? For dry hair?
B Yes. Normal hair?
A Um … for dry hair, please.
A There’s Sunsilk or Palmoline. Which one do you want?
B Sunsilk’s fine, thanks.
A Anything else?
B No, that’s all. How much is that?
A Four pounds twenty.

B There you are.
A Ten pounds. Thank you. And here’s five pounds eighty change.
B Thanks. Bye.
A Bye-bye. Thank you very much.

T 14.1
S = Steve, R = Ryan
S Ryan, where are you and Tara going for your honeymoon?
R Somewhere in Europe, we think. France, maybe, or Spain. I’ve been to Paris, but I haven’t been to Barcelona.
S Yes, Paris is beautiful. But what about Venice? It’s very romantic.
R Mmm, that’s an idea. I’ve been to Italy, but I’ve never been to Venice.
S What about Tara? Where does she want to go?
R Oh, Tara doesn’t mind where we go. She’s been to Mexico and Brazil, but she hasn’t been anywhere in Europe!

T 14.2 see p106
T 14.3 see p106

T 14.4
What has Ryan done?
Yes, I’ve lived in a foreign country. In Japan, actually. I lived in Osaka for a year. I enjoyed it very much. I loved the food. And, yes, I have worked for a big company. I worked for Nissan, the car company, that’s why I was in Japan. That was three years ago, then I got a job back in London.
Have I stayed in an expensive hotel? No, never – only cheap hotels for me, I’m afraid, but I have flown in a jumbo jet – lots of times, actually. Oh, I’ve never cooked a meal for a lot of people. I love food but I don’t like cooking much.
Sometimes I cook for me and my girlfriend Tara, but she likes it better if we go out for a meal! And I’ve never met a famous person – oh, just a minute, well not met, but I’ve seen … er … I saw a famous politician at the airport once – oh, who was it? I can’t remember his name, um … I’ve only seen one Shakespeare play, when I was at school, we saw Romeo and Juliet. It was OK. I’ve ridden a motorbike though. My brother’s got one. It’s very fast. Fortunately, I’ve never been to hospital. My brother has – he fell off his motorbike! Unfortunately, I’ve never won a competition. I do the lottery every week, but I’ve never, ever won a thing!

T 14.5
A honeymoon in Venice
T = Tara, A = Amy
T We’re having a great time!
A Tell me about it! What have you done so far?
T Well, we’ve been to St Mark’s Square. That was the first thing we did. It’s right in the centre of Venice. We sat outside in the sun and had a coffee. We’ve seen the paintings in the Doge’s Palace. It was wonderful. But we haven’t climbed up St Mark’s Bell Tower yet. It was too busy. We’re going early tomorrow morning.
A Have you been in a gondola yet?
T Oh yes, we have! We had a gondola trip yesterday evening. It was so romantic! And we’ve just had a fantastic boat ride along the Grand Canal and we went under the Rialto Bridge! But we haven’t walked across it yet. I wanna do that.
A Wow! You’re busy! Have you visited the Murano glass factories yet? Don’t forget – I want a glass horse!
T I haven’t forgotten. In fact, we took a boat to Murano island yesterday, and I got your horse. OK?
A Oh, thank you, thank you! So what else are you going to do?
T Well, I’d like to go to the beach, you know – at the Lido. It’s so hot here! But we haven’t really decided what else to do yet. There’s so much to see.
A Oh, you’re so lucky! Have a lovely time. Give my love to Ryan!
T Yeah. Bye, Amy. See you next week at the airport!

T 14.6
All around the world
Chorus
I’ve been around the world and I
can’t find my baby.
I don’t know who, I don’t know why
Why he’s gone away
And I don’t know where he can be, my baby
But I’m gonna find him
We had a quarrel and I let myself go
I said so many things, things he didn’t know
And I was oh so bad
And I don’t think he’s coming back
He gave the reason, the reasons he should go
And he said so many things he’s never said before
And he was oh so mad
And I don’t think he’s coming, coming back
I did too much lying, wasted too much time
Now I’m here crying.

Chorus
So open-hearted, he never did me wrong
I was the one, the weakest one of all
And now I’m oh so sad
And I don’t think he’s coming back, coming back
I did too much lying, wasted too much time
Now I’m here crying.

Chorus
I’ve been around the world looking for my baby
Been around the world and I’m gonna
I’m gonna find him

T 14.7
British Airways flight BA516 to Geneva boarding at gate 4, last call. Flight BA516 to Geneva, last call.
Scandinavian Airlines flight SK 832 to Frankfurt is delayed one hour. Flight SK 832 to Frankfurt, delayed one hour.
Air France flight 472 to Amsterdam is now boarding at gate 17. Flight AF 472 to Amsterdam, now boarding, gate 17.
Lufthansa flight 309 to Miami is now boarding at gate 32. Flight LH 309 to Miami, now boarding, gate 32.

Virgin Airlines flight to New York, VS 876 to New York. Please wait in the departure lounge until a further announcement. Thank you.

Passengers are reminded to keep their hand luggage with them at all times.

T 14.8

1  A  Listen! ... BA 516 to Geneva. That's our flight.
    B  Did the announcement say gate 4 or 14?
    A  I couldn't hear. I think it said 4.
    B  Look! There it is on the departure board.
    It is gate 4.
    A  OK. Come on! Let's go.

2  A  Can I have your ticket, please?
    B  Yes, of course.
    A  Thank you. How many suitcases have you got?
    B  Just one.
    A  And have you got much hand luggage?
    B  Just this bag.
    A  That's fine.
    B  Oh ... can I have a seat next to the window?
    A  Yes, that's OK. Here's your boarding pass. Have a nice flight!

3  A  Ryan! Tara! Over here!
    B  Hi! Amy! Great to see you!
    A  It's great to see you too. You look terrific! Did you have a good honeymoon?
    B  Fantastic. Everything was fantastic.
    A  Well, you haven't missed anything here. Nothing much has happened at all!

4  A  There's my flight. It's time to go.
    B  Oh no! It's been a wonderful two weeks. I can't believe it's over.
    A  I know. When can we see each other again?
    B  Soon, I hope. I'll email every day.
    A  I'll phone too. Goodbye, my darling. Give my love to your family.
    B  Goodbye, Lukas.

Song: Teacher's Book p153
1.5 Plural nouns
1 Most nouns add -s in the plural.
   stamps keys cameras
2 If the noun ends in -s, -ss, -sh, or -ch, add -es.
   bus → buses class → classes wish → wishes
3 If the noun ends in a consonant + -y, the -y changes to -ies.
   country countries party parties
   key keys day days
4 Some nouns are irregular. Dictionaries show this.
   child children person people
   woman women man men

1.6 Numbers 1–20
1 one 6 six 11 eleven 16 sixteen
2 two 7 seven 12 twelve 17 seventeen
3 three 8 eight 13 thirteen 18 eighteen
4 four 9 nine 14 fourteen 19 nineteen
5 five 10 ten 15 fifteen 20 twenty

1.7 Prepositions
Where are you from?
I live in a house in Fortaleza.
What’s this in English?

EXERCISES

1 Complete the sentences. Use am, is, or are.
   1 How _______ you?
   2 I _______ fine, thanks.
   3 Patrick _______ my brother.
   4 We _______ both 23 years old.
   5 Katy and Paul _______ married.

2 Complete the conversation. Use my, your, her, or his.
   Ann Hi, (1) _______ name’s Ann. What’s (2) _______ name?
   Nick Hi! (3) _______ name’s Nick. This is my sister. (4) _______ name’s Maria.
   Ann Hi. This is my brother. (5) _______ name is Tom.

3 Choose the correct question word.
   1 How / What is your name?
   2 What / How are you?
   3 What / Where are you from?

4 Complete the sentences. Use a or an.
   1 It’s _______ stamp. 4 I’m _______ student.
   2 He’s _______ teacher. 5 It’s _______ orange.
   3 It’s _______ apple.

5 Write the plural form.
   1 dictionary _______ 4 child _______
   2 student _______ 5 day _______
   3 orange _______
UNIT 2

2.1 Verb to be

Questions with question words

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>What</th>
<th>Answers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>is her surname?</td>
<td>Jefferson.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>is his job?</td>
<td>He's a policeman.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>is her address?</td>
<td>34, Church Street.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Where</th>
<th>Mexico.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>is she are you</td>
<td>from?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>are they</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Who</th>
<th>She's Patrick's daughter.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>is she?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>How old</th>
<th>Twenty-two.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>is he? are you</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>How much</th>
<th>One pound 50p.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>is an ice-cream?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Yes/No questions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Is he it you they</th>
<th>young?</th>
<th>married?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>is he it you they</td>
<td>Yes, he is. No, she isn’t. Yes, it is. No, I’m not./No, we aren’t. Yes, they are./No, they aren’t.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Short answers

Negative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I’m not</th>
<th>I’m not = I am not (I’m not)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>He isn’t</td>
<td>He isn’t = He is not</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She isn’t</td>
<td>She isn’t = She is not</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It isn’t</td>
<td>It isn’t = It is not</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We aren’t = We are not</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You aren’t = You are not</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They aren’t = They are not</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

UNIT 3

3.1 Present Simple he, she, it

1. The Present Simple expresses a fact which is always true, or true for a long time.
   - He comes from Switzerland. She works in a bank.

2. It also expresses a habit.
   - She goes skiing in winter. He never has a holiday.

Positive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>He she it lives</th>
<th>in Australia.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>He she it</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Negative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>He she it doesn’t live</th>
<th>in France.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>He she it</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Question

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Where does he she it live?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Yes/No questions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Does he she it live in Australia? in France?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Does he she it live in Australia? in France?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Short answers

Yes, he does. No, she doesn’t. Yes, it does.
3.2 Spelling of the third person singular
1. Most verbs add -s in the third person singular.
   - wear - wears, speak - speaks, live - lives.
   - But go and do are different. They add -es.
   - go - goes, do - does.
2. If the verb ends in -s, -sh, or -ch, add -es.
   - finish - finishes, watch - watches.
3. If the verb ends in a consonant + -y, the -y changes to -ies.
   - fly - flies, study - studies.
   - But if the verb ends in a vowel + -y the -y does not change.
   - play - plays.
4. Have is irregular.
   - have - has.

3.3 Prepositions
She lives in Kenya.
He plays tennis in his free time.
A nurse looks after people in hospital.
He lives on an island in the west of Scotland.
He collects the post from the boat.
He drives the children to school.
Tourists come by boat.
It's about 6.30.

EXERCISES

1. Write the third person singular form of the verbs.
   1. do _________ 4. speak _________
   2. watch _________ 5. have _________
   3. listen _________ 6. walk _________

2. Change the sentences from positive to negative.
   1. Olivier comes from Belgium. _________
   2. Sandra works in a school. _________
   3. Bill speaks Japanese. _________
   4. My sister has two children. _________
   5. Lucy goes to Greece every year. _________
   6. Peter studies art at college. _________

3. Make questions.
   1. study / Harry / German / at school / does / ?
   2. does / she / live / where / ?
   3. does / come / this stamp / where / from / ?
   4. sports / does / enjoy / she / what / ?
   5. Guy / got / has / dog / a / ?

4. Complete the sentences. Use the Present Simple.
   1. _________ he _________ in Greece? (live)
   2. You _________ in a bank. (not work)
   3. I _________ TV in the evenings. (watch)
   4. Marta _________ a new boyfriend. (have)
   5. I _________ Spanish. (not speak)
   6. Carlo _________ English? (study)

UNIT 4

4.1 Present Simple

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Negative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I start</td>
<td>I don't start</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You</td>
<td>at 6.30.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>start</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Question

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>When</th>
<th>do</th>
<th>I you they</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>we</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>does</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>he</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>she</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>it</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Yes/No questions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Do</th>
<th>you they have</th>
<th>a camera?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Does</td>
<td>he she it</td>
<td>like Chinese food?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Short answers

No, I don't./No, we don't.
Yes, they do.
Yes, he does.
No, she doesn't.
Yes, it does.

4.2 Adverbs of frequency

\[
\begin{array}{|c|c|c|c|}
\hline
\text{Never} & \text{Sometimes} & \text{Often} & \text{Usually} & \text{Always} \\
\hline
0\% & 50\% & 100\% \\
\hline
\end{array}
\]

1. These adverbs usually come before the main verb.
   - She never eats meat.
   - I sometimes play tennis on Saturdays.
   - I don't often go swimming.
   - I usually go to bed at about 11.00.
   - We always have wine in the evenings.

2. Sometimes and usually can also come at the beginning of a sentence.
   - Sometimes we play cards.
   - Usually I walk to school.
   - I walk to school usually.

3. Never and always can't come at the beginning or the end of a sentence. NOT Never I go to the theatre.
   - Always I have tea in the morning.

4.3 like/love + verb + -ing

When like and love are followed by a verb, it is usually verb + -ing.
   - I like cooking.
   - She loves listening to music.

4.4 Prepositions

She gets up early on weekdays.
She goes to the gym on Friday mornings.
They never go out on Saturday evenings.
Do you relax at weekends?
She gets up at six o'clock.
She gets up early in the morning.
We go out in the evening.
She goes surfing in summer.
EXERCISES

1. Complete the sentences. Use the positive form of the verbs in the box.

play  go  live  work  speak

1. My best friend ___________ in Italy.
2. John and Kate ___________ French and German.
3. Nadia often ___________ running before breakfast.
4. I ___________ six days a week.
5. My brother ___________ the piano.


1. he / like / swimming?

No, ___________.
2. you / have / a computer?

Yes, ___________.
3. they / live / in Paris?

Yes, ___________.
4. she / start / at 9.00?

No, ___________.
5. we / speak / English?

Yes, ___________.

3. Put the adverb in the correct place.

1. George walks to work. (always) ___________.
2. Sandra watches TV. (never) ___________.
3. You don’t go running. (often) ___________.

4. Find and correct two incorrect sentences.

1. Vicky loves listen to the radio. ___________.
2. My sister likes going shopping. ___________.
3. They love reading. ___________.
4. David likes to cooking. ___________.

UNIT 5

5.1 There is/are

Positive

There is ___________.

a sofa.

There are ___________.

two books.

Negative

There isn’t ___________.

an armchair.

There aren’t ___________.

any flowers.

Yes/No questions

Is there ___________.

a table?

Are there ___________.

any photos?

Short answers

Yes, there is.

No, there isn’t.

Yes, there are.

No, there aren’t.

5.2 How many . . .?

How many books do you have?

5.3 some/any

Positive

There are some flowers. some plural noun

Negative

There aren’t any cups. any plural noun

Question

Are there any books? any plural noun

5.4 this, that, these, those

We use this/these to talk about people/things that are near to us.

I like this ice-cream.

I want these shoes.

We use that/those to talk about people/things that aren’t near to us.

Do you like that picture on the wall?

Who are those children outside?

5.5 Prepositions

He lives in the south of France.

There is a photo on the television.

There are two pictures on the wall.

The cinema is on the left, opposite the flower shop.

The bank is next to the supermarket.

The bus stop is near the park.

There is a post box in front of the post office.

There are magazines under the table.

EXERCISES

1. Match the two halves of the sentences.

1. Is there _________.
2. There are _________.
3. Are there _________.
4. There isn’t _________.

a. any boys?
b. a computer.
c. a letter?
d. two girls.

2. Make sentences. Use the verb be (+, –, or ?).  

1. (?) _________.
2. (–) _________.
3. (+) _________.
4. (?) _________.
5. (–) _________.
6. (+) _________.

a. any boys?
b. a computer.
c. a letter?
d. two girls.

3. Complete the sentences. Use some, any, or many.

1. How _________.
2. There are _________.
3. Are there _________.
4. There are _________.
5. How _________.

a. apples are there?
b. photos.
c. glasses?
d. biscuits.
e. sandwiches do you want?

4. Choose the correct word.

1. I like this / these clock.
2. Do you want those / that books?
3. These / this flowers are beautiful!
4. Where is that / those cafe?
UNIT 6

6.1 can/can’t

Can and can’t have the same form in all persons. There is no do or does. Can is followed by the infinitive (without to).

could/couldn’t

Could is the past of can. Could and couldn’t have the same form in all persons. Could is followed by the infinitive (without to).

Positive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I</th>
<th>He/She/It</th>
<th>can</th>
<th>swim.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Negative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I</th>
<th>He/She/It</th>
<th>can’t</th>
<th>dance.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Question

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>What</th>
<th>can</th>
<th>I</th>
<th>you</th>
<th>he/she/it</th>
<th>do?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Yes/No questions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Can</th>
<th>Could</th>
<th>you</th>
<th>she</th>
<th>drive?</th>
<th>cook?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Short answers

| No, I can’t. No, we couldn’t. Yes, she can/could. Yes, they can/could. |

6.2 was/were

Was/were is the past of am/is/are.

Positive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I</th>
<th>He/She/It</th>
<th>was</th>
<th>in Paris yesterday.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>We</td>
<td>You</td>
<td>were</td>
<td>in England last year.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Negative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I</th>
<th>He/She/It</th>
<th>wasn’t</th>
<th>at school yesterday.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>We</td>
<td>You</td>
<td>weren’t</td>
<td>at the party last night.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Question

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Where</th>
<th>was</th>
<th>I? he/she/it?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>were</td>
<td>we/you/they?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Yes/No questions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Was</th>
<th>he</th>
<th>she</th>
<th>at work?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Were</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>they</td>
<td>at home?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Short answers

| No, he wasn’t. Yes, she was. Yes, I was./Yes, we were. No, they weren’t. |

was born

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Where</th>
<th>was</th>
<th>she</th>
<th>he</th>
<th>born?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>were</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>they</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

I was born in Manchester in 1980. NOT I am born in 1980.

6.3 Prepositions

I was at a party. Yesterday there was a party at my house. Can I speak to you? He sits at his computer for hours.

EXERCISES

1 Correct the sentences.

1 Tanya can sing, but she couldn’t dance.

2 Mark could to swim two years ago, but he couldn’t ride a bicycle.

3 Do you can play tennis?

4 What I can do today?

2 Write sentences that are true for you. Use can/can’t or could/couldn’t.

1 I ________ play an instrument.
2 I ________ use a computer.
3 I ________ fly a plane.
4 I ________ cook.
5 I ________ ride a bike when I was six.
6 I ________ swim when I was two.
7 I ________ speak two languages when I was eight.
8 I ________ speak my language when I was four.

3 Rewrite the sentences in the past. Use was or were.

1 I’m in London.
2 They are at a party.
3 Where are you?
4 You aren’t at school.
5 She’s at home.
6 Are they in the restaurant?
7 Where’s David?
8 We aren’t at work.
UNIT 7

7.1 Past Simple – spelling of regular verbs
1. The normal rule is to add -ed.
   worked started
   If the verb ends in -e, add -d.
   lived loved
2. If the verb has only one syllable and one vowel and one consonant, double the consonant.
   stopped planned
3. Verbs that end in a consonant + -y change to -ied.
   studied carried

7.2 Past Simple
The Past Simple expresses a past action that is finished.
I lived in Rome when I was six.
She started work when she was eight.
The form of the Past Simple is the same in all persons.

Positive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I</th>
<th>He/She/It</th>
<th>moved</th>
<th>to London in 1985.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>We</td>
<td>went</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Negative
We use didn’t + infinitive (without to) in all persons.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I</th>
<th>He/She/It</th>
<th>didn’t move</th>
<th>go to London.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>We</td>
<td></td>
<td>go</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You</td>
<td></td>
<td>go</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They</td>
<td></td>
<td>go</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Question
We use did + infinitive (without to) in all persons.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>When Where</th>
<th>did</th>
<th>1 you he/she/it go?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Yes/No questions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Did</th>
<th>you they etc.</th>
<th>like enjoy</th>
<th>the film? the party?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Short answers
No, I didn’t. No, we didn’t. Yes, she did. No, they didn’t.

There is list of irregular verbs on the inside back cover.

7.3 Time expressions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>last</th>
<th>night</th>
<th>week</th>
<th>month</th>
<th>year</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7.4 Prepositions
She travelled around the world.
She acted in over 50 films.
She worked for 20th Century Fox.
She went to school when she was 12.
She flew across the Atlantic.
Are you interested in modern art?

UNIT 8

8.1 Past Simple
Negative
Negatives in the Past Simple are the same in all persons.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1/He/She</th>
<th>We/You/They</th>
<th>didn’t go out see Tom</th>
<th>last night.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

ago
I went to the USA ten years / two weeks / a month ago.

8.2 Time expressions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>in</th>
<th>the twentieth century / 1924 / the 1990s</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

on 10 October / Christmas Day / Saturday / Sunday evening
at seven o’clock / weekends / night

8.3 Prepositions
He started in the 1820s.
Only US cars had windscreen wipers by 1916.
I tried to forget about him.
People didn’t hear about his invention.

People laughed at her idea.
I fell in love with him.
They lived by the lake.
EXERCISES

1. Make sentences.
   1. Sue / yesterday / to the cinema / went
   2. ago / I / met / Nick / two years
   3. last night / go / they / out / didn't
   4. three weeks / Jack / ago / was born
   5. Friday / we / last / met

2. Rewrite the sentences. Use the negative form of the Past Simple.
   1. I watched TV last night.
   2. They travelled by train.
   3. Mary sang in the concert last week.
   4. Pete saw three men outside the bank.
   5. We went to New York in 2002.

3. Complete the sentences. Use the Past Simple.
   1. Nick _______ off his bike. (fall)
   2. I _______ them an email. (send)
   3. You _______ my glasses! (find)
   4. She _______ a cup of coffee. (drink)
   5. We _______ a new DVD. (buy)

4. Choose the correct preposition.
   1. They met on / at / in 11 June.
   2. Kate was born in / at / on the 1980s.
   3. We play tennis on / in / at weekends.
   4. She bought the flat at / on / in May.
   5. What did you do in / at / on Monday?

UNIT 9

9.1 Count and uncount nouns

Some nouns are countable.
   - a book → two books
   - an egg → six eggs

Some nouns are uncountable.
   - bread
   - rice

Some nouns are both!
   - Do you like ice-cream? We'd like three ice-creams, please.

9.2 would like

Would is the same in all persons.
We use would like in offers and requests.

Positive

I
You
He/She/It
We
They
'd like
'd = would

Yes/No questions

Would you like a drink? Yes, please.
No, thank you.

9.3 some and any

We use some in positive sentences with uncount nouns and plural nouns.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>There is</th>
<th>some bread</th>
<th>on the table.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>oranges</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

We use some in questions when we ask for things and offer things.

Can I have some coffee, please?
Would you like grapes?

We use any in questions and negative sentences with uncount nouns and plural nouns.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Is there</th>
<th>any water?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>children?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>rice?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>people?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(I don't know if there is any water / if she has any children.)

9.4 How much ...? and How many ...?

We use How much ...? with uncount nouns.
   How much rice is there? There isn't much rice.

We use How many ...? with count nouns.
   How many apples are there? There aren't many apples.

9.5 Prepositions

I've got a book by John Grisham.
What do you have for breakfast?
Germany has many kinds of sausages.

EXERCISES

1. Write C (countable) or U (uncountable).
   1. milk
   2. money
   3. homework
   4. CD
   5. apple
   6. bread
   7. fruit
   8. tea

2. Complete the sentences. Use Would ... like or 'd like.

   I _______ a cup of coffee, please.
   _______ they _______ some food?
   _______ you _______ to go out tonight?
   _______ she _______ a drink?

3. Choose the correct word.

   Can I have any / some milk, please?
   Do they have some / any sandwiches?
   There are some / any oranges.
   Would you like any / some coffee?
   Are there any / some biscuits?

4. Complete the sentences. Use is, are, some, any, much, or many.

   How _______ sugar is there?
   I'd like _______ water, please.
   _______ there any bread?
   How _______ people did you see?
   There ______ some letters for you.
   Have you got _______ money?
UNIT 10

10.1 Comparative and superlative adjectives

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adjective</th>
<th>Comparative</th>
<th>Superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>One-syllable adjectives</td>
<td>old, safe, big, hot</td>
<td>older, safer, bigger*, hotter*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adjectives ending in -y</td>
<td>noisy, dirty</td>
<td>noisier, dirtier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Two or more syllable adjectives</td>
<td>boring, beautiful</td>
<td>more boring, more beautiful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Irregular adjectives</td>
<td>good, bad, far</td>
<td>better, worse, further</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Adjectives which end in one vowel and one consonant double the consonant.

You're older than me.
New York is dirtier than Paris.
Prague is one of the most beautiful cities in Europe.

10.2 have got and have

Have got means the same as have to talk about possession, but the form is very different. We often use have got in spoken English.

have got

Positive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I / You</th>
<th>have a cat, a garden.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>We</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He</td>
<td>has</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Negative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I / You</th>
<th>haven't got a dog, a garage.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>We</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He</td>
<td>hasn't</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Questions

Have I / you / we / they got any money? a sister?

How many children have they got?

Short answers

Yes, I have. / No, I haven't. Yes, she has. / No, she hasn't.
The past of both have and have got is had.

10.3 Prepositions

The country is quieter than the city.
The house is 50 metres from the sea.
Everest is the highest mountain in the world.
He spends his time on the banks of the river.
He drove along the road.
He drove round the corner.
They ran over the bridge.
I walked past the pub.
He walked up the hill.
He ran down the hill.
The cat ran through the house.
He jumped into the lake.

EXERCISES

1 Write the comparative and superlative form.

1 easy _________
2 boring __________
3 far __________
4 noisy __________
5 nice __________

2 Tick the correct sentence in each pair.

1 ☐ My computer’s bigger than yours.
☐ My computer is more big than yours.

2 ✗ This is the noisiest city I know!
☐ This is the noisiest city I know!

3 ☐ It’s the worse film in the world.
☐ It’s the worst film in the world.

4 ☐ Seville is hotter than London.
☐ Seville is hotter than London.

5 ☐ Museums are boringer than parks.
☐ Museums are more boring than parks.

3 Make sentences. Use have got (+, -, or ?).

1 (+) I / a brother

2 (?) you / a pet

3 (-) they / a car

4 (?) we / any money

5 (-) he / a computer

6 (+) it / a cinema
UNIT 11

11.1 Present Continuous
1 The Present Continuous describes an activity that is happening now.
   She's wearing jeans.
   I'm studying English.
2 It also describes an activity in the near future.
   I'm playing tennis this afternoon.
   Jane's seeing her boyfriend tonight.

Positive and negative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>am</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>He</td>
<td>is (not) going outside.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She</td>
<td>are</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It</td>
<td>are</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We</td>
<td>are</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You</td>
<td>are</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They</td>
<td>are</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Question

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>am I</th>
<th>is he she it</th>
<th>going?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>is</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>are</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Yes/No questions

Are you having a good time?
Yes, we are.
Is my English getting better?
Yes, it is.
Are they having a party?
No, they aren't.

Short answers

1 I'm
2 He's
3 She's
4 They're

11.3 Whose + possessive pronouns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Object</th>
<th>Adjective</th>
<th>Pronoun</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>me</td>
<td>my</td>
<td>mine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>your</td>
<td>yours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He</td>
<td>him</td>
<td>his</td>
<td>his</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She</td>
<td>her</td>
<td>her</td>
<td>hers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We</td>
<td>us</td>
<td>our</td>
<td>ours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They</td>
<td>them</td>
<td>their</td>
<td>theirs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Whose is this book?
Whose book is this?
Whose is it?
It's mine. yours. hers.
his. ours. theirs.

11.4 Prepositions

We've got this jumper in red.
He's talking to Mandy.
There's a girl with fair hair.
I'm looking for a jumper.
I always pay by credit card.

EXERCISES

1 Complete the sentences. Use the Present Continuous.
   1 He ________ maths at university. (study)
   2 I ________ away this weekend. (not go)
   3 ________ they ________? (work)
   4 She ________ the party. (not enjoy)
   5 ________ you ________ Sam tonight? (see)

2 Write the -ing form.
   1 write ________
   2 stop ________
   3 travel ________
   4 go ________
   5 dance ________

3 Complete the sentences. Use Whose or Who's.
   1 ________ books are these?
   2 ________ standing at the door?
   3 ________ going to pass the exam?
   4 ________ is this pen?
   5 ________ dog is that?

4 Complete the sentences. Use the Present Simple or Continuous.
   1 Juan ________ from Barcelona. (come)
   2 I ________ Jo at 6 p.m. tonight. (meet)
   3 Why ________ you ________ now? (laugh)
   4 She always ________ nice clothes. (wear)
   5 We're late! ________ you ________? (come)
UNIT 12

12.1 going to

1 Going to expresses a person's plans and intentions.
   She's going to be a ballet dancer when she grows up.
   We're going to stay in a villa in France this summer.

2 Often there is no difference between going to and the Present Continuous to refer to a future intention.
   I'm seeing Peter tonight.
   I'm going to see Peter tonight.

3 We also use going to when we can see now that something is sure to happen in the future.
   Careful! That glass is going to fall!

Positive and negative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I</th>
<th>am</th>
<th>(not) going to</th>
<th>have a break. stay at home.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>He/She/It</td>
<td>is</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We/You/They</td>
<td>are</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Questions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>When</th>
<th>am</th>
<th>I</th>
<th>going to</th>
<th>have a break? stay at home?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>is</td>
<td></td>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>are</td>
<td></td>
<td>we/you/they</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

With the verbs to go and to come, we usually use the Present Continuous for future plans.

We're going to Paris next week.
Joe and Tim are coming for lunch tomorrow.

12.2 Infinitive of purpose

The infinitive can express why a person does something.
I'm saving my money to buy a CD player.
( = I want to buy a CD player)
We're going to Paris to have a holiday.
( = we want to have a holiday)
NOT
I'm saving my money for to buy a CD player.
I'm saving my money for buy a CD player.

12.3 Prepositions

What did he do as a child?
He grew up in the city.
I'm going to Florida in a year's time.

What's on TV tonight?
What's on at the cinema?

EXERCISES

1 Complete the sentences. Use going to (+, -, or ?).

1 (+) Look! It __________ be a lovely day!
2 (?) __________ Bill __________ see Dan tonight?
3 (-) I __________ study this weekend.
4 (+) Be careful! You __________ fall.
5 (-) We __________ play football today.
6 (?) __________ you __________ cook dinner tonight?
7 (+) He __________ pass the exam.
8 (-) I __________ work tomorrow.
9 (?) _________ they __________ stay with us?

2 Rewrite the sentences. Use an infinitive of purpose.

1 I'm going out because I want to walk the dog.

2 They're saving money because they want to buy a flat.

3 She's going to the bank because she wants to get some cash.

4 Nick is running because he wants to get fit.

5 You are studying because you want to learn English.

6 I'm going to the chemist's because I want to buy aspirin.

UNIT 13

13.1 Question forms

When did Shakespeare live?
Where did Hans Christian Andersen come from?
Who did she marry?
Who created Mickey Mouse?
How do you get to school?
What do you have for breakfast?
What happens at the end of the story?
Why do you want to learn English?
How many people are there in the class?
How much does she earn?
How far is it to the centre?
What sort of car do you have?
Which newspaper do you read?

13.2 Adjectives and adverbs

Adjectives describe nouns.
a big dog a careful driver

Adverbs describe verbs.
She ran quickly. He drives too fast.

To form regular adverbs, add -ly to the adjective.
Words ending in -y change to -ily.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adjective</th>
<th>Adverb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>quick</td>
<td>quickly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bad</td>
<td>badly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>careful</td>
<td>carefully</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>immediate</td>
<td>immediately</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>easy</td>
<td>easily</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Some adverbs are irregular.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adjective</th>
<th>Adverb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>good</td>
<td>well</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hard</td>
<td>hard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>early</td>
<td>early</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fast</td>
<td>fast</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

13.3 Prepositions

What's the story about?
What happens at the end of the story?
EXERCISES

1 Complete the sentences. Use a suitable question word.
1 ________ many children have you got?
2 ________ does Gianni come from?
3 ________ are you doing?
4 ________ does the class start?
5 ________ much time have we got?

2 Correct the sentences.
1 Who Sally married?
2 What does happen at the start of the film?
3 Which town you live in?
4 How far it is to the town hall?
5 Why you want to buy that CD?

3 Change the adjectives into adverbs.
1 good ________ 4 fast ________
2 hard ________ 5 careful ________
3 immediate ________

4 Choose the correct adjective.
1 This film is very bored / boring.
2 I was amazed / amazing when I saw it.
3 Pete was boring / bored, so he went home.
4 This article is very interesting / interested.
5 She's frightening / frightened of dogs.

UNIT 14

14.1 Present Perfect
1 The Present Perfect refers to an action that happened some time before now.
   She's travelled to most parts of the world.
   Have you ever been in a car accident?
2 If we want to say when these actions happened, we must use the Past Simple.
   She went to Russia two years ago.
   I was in a crash when I was 10.
3 Notice the time expressions used with the Past Simple.
   I left last night/yesterday/in 1990/at three o'clock/on Monday.

Positive and negative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I</th>
<th>have</th>
<th>(not) been</th>
<th>to the States.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>You</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

been and gone
She's gone to Portugal. (= she's there now)
She's been to Portugal. (= now she has returned)

Question

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Where</th>
<th>have</th>
<th>I you we they</th>
<th>been?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>has</td>
<td>she</td>
<td>he</td>
<td>it</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Yes/No questions
Have you been to Russia?
Short answers
Yes, I have./No, I haven't.

ever and never
We use ever in questions and never in negative sentences.
Have you ever been to Russia? I've never been to Russia.

14.2 yet and just
We use just in positive sentences. We use yet in negative sentences and questions.
   Have you done your homework yet?
   I haven't done it yet (but I'm going to).
   I have just done it (a short time before now).

14.3 Prepositions
She works for a big company.
Ryan and Tara are on honeymoon.
Hamlet is a play by Shakespeare.

EXERCISES

1 Tick the correct sentence in each pair.
1 ☐ I went to Finland last year.
☐ I have been to Finland last year.
2 ☐ Have you ever met a famous person?
☐ Did you ever meet a famous person?
3 ☐ Kate's not here. She went to Paris.
☐ Kate's not here. She's gone to Paris.
4 ☐ You have met him when you were six.
☐ You met him when you were six.

2 Complete the sentences. Use the Present Perfect (+, –, or ?).
1 (+) He ________ all over the world. (travel)
2 (?) ________ you ever ________ this film? (see)
3 (–) We ________ on holiday this year. (be)
4 (+) They ________ your letter. (read)
5 (?) ________ Bill ________ the shopping? (do)
6 (–) We ________ the card yet. (send)

3 Put the adverb in the correct place.
1 Have you finished the report? (yet)
2 I've been to Australia. (never)
3 Tom has called. (just)
4 Has Tony lived in London? (ever)

4 Write short answers that are true for you.
1 Have you ever been to Manchester?
2 Have you taken any exams this year?
3 Have any of your friends ever played in a rock band?
4 Has your best friend ever lied to you?
5 Has the lesson finished yet?
Pairwork activities  Student A

UNIT 5 p37  What's in your picture?
This picture of a living room is not complete. Ask Student B questions to find out where the things in the box go. Draw them in the correct place.

UNIT 6 p50  On the phone
1 You are the operator. Ask questions to find out who your partner wants to phone. Start: International Directory Enquiries. Which country, please?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Country</th>
<th>Town</th>
<th>Last name</th>
<th>Initial</th>
<th>Address</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Finish: The number you require is 75 842 2209

2 You want to call Fernando. Answer Student B's questions to get Fernando's telephone number.

Travel Peru

Fernando Diaz  Lima PERU
Tourist guide  Jiron Junín 612
Tel: [blank space]
email: flmdiaz@travel.co.pe
UNIT 8 p60 Famous inventions

When were things invented? With a partner, ask and answer questions.

**When was Coca-Cola invented?**

**In 1886.**

**That's . . . years ago.**

1. Coca-Cola was invented in ________.
2. The camera was invented in 1826.
3. The record player was invented in ________.
4. The first plane was invented in 1903.
5. Jeans were invented in ________.
6. Hamburgers were invented in 1895.
7. Cars were invented in ________.
8. The telephone was invented in 1876.
9. The television was invented in ________.
10. Bicycles were invented in about 1840.

UNIT 8 p62 Did you know that?

With a partner, make similar conversations.

A Did you know that Marco Polo brought spaghetti back from China?
B Really? He didn't! That's incredible!
A Well, it's true.
B Did you know that Napoleon was afraid of cats?
A He wasn't! I don't believe it!
B Well, it's true!

Did you know that . . .

... Vincent van Gogh sold only two of his paintings while he was alive?
... the actress Shirley Temple was a millionaire before she was ten?
... Shakespeare spelled his name in eleven different ways?
... in 1979 it snowed in the Sahara desert?
... King Louis XIV of France had a bath only three times in his life?

UNIT 10 p76 I've got more than you!

Work with a partner. You are both famous film stars. Ask and answer questions to find out who is richer!

**I've got five boats. How many have you got?**

**Twelve. I've got this one, four in the Mediterranean, two in the South Pacific, two in the Caribbean, and three in Asia.**

**Well, I've got thirty cars!**

**That's nothing! I've got . . .**

- 5 boats
- 80 gold and diamond rings
- 100 Arab horses
- 8 gold watches
- 4 houses
- 25 servants
- 150 million dollars

UNIT 11 p84 Who's at the party?

Work with a partner. You each have a picture of a party. Talk about the pictures to find ten differences. Do not show your picture to your partner!

**In my picture three people are dancing.**

**In my picture four people are dancing.**

**There's a girl with fair hair.**

**Is she wearing a black dress?**
Pairwork activities  Student B

UNIT 2 p13  Who is he?

Surname
First name  Patrick
Country
Job  Accountant
Address
Phone number  (21) 434 1075
Age
Married  Yes

UNIT 5 p37  What’s in your picture?

This picture of a living room is complete. Student A’s picture is incomplete. Answer Student A’s questions about the things in the box to help him/her complete the picture.

Where’s the lamp?  It’s on the table.
Where exactly?  Next to the book.
lamp  magazines  photos  plants  clock  rug

UNIT 6 p50  On the phone

1 You want to call Yoshi. Answer Student A’s questions to get Yoshi’s telephone number.

Yoshi Ishigawa
BUSINESSMAN
659 Tearaimizu-cho
KYOTO 604-8152
JAPAN
Tel: __________
email: ishigawa@nkg.or.jp

2 You are the operator. Ask questions to find out who your partner wants to phone. Start: International Directory Enquiries. Which country, please?

Country
Town
Last name
Initial
Address

Finish: The number you require is 998 764 9832

UNIT 8 p60  Famous inventions

When were things invented? With a partner, ask and answer questions.

When was the camera invented?  In 1826.
That’s . . . years ago.

1 Coca-Cola was invented in __1886__ .
2 The camera was invented in ________ .
3 The record player was invented in __1878__ .
4 The first plane was invented in ________ .
5 Jeans were invented in __1873__ .
6 Hamburgers were invented in ________ .
7 Cars were invented in __1893__ .
8 The telephone was invented in ________ .
9 The television was invented in __1926__ .
10 Bicycles were invented in about ________ .
UNIT 8 p62 Did you know that?

With a partner, make similar conversations.

A Did you know that Marco Polo brought spaghetti back from China?
B Really? He didn’t! That’s incredible!
A Well, it’s true.
B Did you know that Napoleon was afraid of cats?
A He wasn’t! I don’t believe it!
B Well, it’s true!

Did you know that ...

... it took 1,700 years to build the Great Wall of China?
... Walt Disney used his own voice for the character of Mickey Mouse?
... Shakespeare and Cervantes both died on 23 April 1616?
... King Francis I of France bought the painting Mona Lisa to put in his bathroom?
... when Shakespeare was alive, there were no actresses, only male actors?

UNIT 10 p76 I’ve got more than you!

Work with a partner. You are both famous film stars. Ask and answer questions to find out who is richer!

I’ve got five boats.
How many have you got?

Well, I’ve got thirty cars!
That’s nothing! I’ve got ...

Twelve. I’ve got this one, four in the Mediterranean, two in the South Pacific, two in the Caribbean, and three in Asia.

UNIT 11 p84 Who’s at the party?

Work with a partner. You each have a picture of a party. Talk about the pictures to find ten differences. Do not show your picture to your partner!

In my picture three people are dancing.

In my picture four people are dancing.

There’s a girl with fair hair.

Is she wearing a black dress?

UNIT 12 p96 The weather

Work with a partner. Find out about the weather round the world yesterday. Look at the information on this page. Ask and answer questions to complete the information.

What was the weather like in Athens?

It was sunny and warm. 18 degrees.

WORLD WEATHER

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>°C</th>
<th></th>
<th>°C</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Athens</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>18</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Berlin</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bombay</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>31</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Edinburgh</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Geneva</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hong Kong</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lisbon</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>19</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>London</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Los Angeles</td>
<td>Fg</td>
<td>21</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luxor</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Milan</td>
<td>Fg</td>
<td>19</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moscow</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oslo</td>
<td>Sn</td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

S = sunny
C = cloudy
Fg = foggy
R = rainy
Sn = snowy
Word list

UNIT 1

apple n /ˈæpl/  
Australia n /əˈstreliə/  
bag n /bæɡ/  
because conj /bɪˈkɔz/  
Brazil n /ˈbrazɪl/  
brother n /ˈbrʌðə/  
camera n /ˈkæmərə/  
children n pl /ˈtʃɪldrən/  
cinema n /ˈsɪnəmə/  
country n /ˈkʌntri/  
day n /deɪ/  
dictionary n /ˈdɪkʃənri/  
England n /ˈɪŋɡlənd/  
fine adj /fain/  
flat n /flæt/  
France n /ˈfrαːns/  
from prep /frəm/  
Germany n /ˈdʒɜːməni/  
goodbye /ɡʊdˈbai/  
have v /hæv/  
hello /həˈloʊ/  
his pron /hɪz/  
Hungary n /ˈhʌŋɡɔrɪ/  
international adj /ˌɪntəˈnʃənəl/  
Italy n /ˈɪtəli/  
Japan n /dʒəˈpæn/  
job n /dʒoʊb/  
key n /ki/  
language n /ˈlæŋgwɪdʒ/  
learn v /lɜːn/  
letter n /ˈlɛtə/  
live v /lɪv/  
magazine n /ˈmeɪɡəzi:n/  
marr omed adj /ˈmærɪd/  
me pron /mi/  
Mexico n /ˈmɛksɪkəʊ/  
mobile n /ˈmɔbl/  
my pron /maɪ/  
named n /ˈnɛm/  
newspaper n /ˈnjuːspɪər/  
nice adj /nai/  
not bad adj /nɔtˈbæd/  
not good adj /nɔtˈɡʊd/  
orange n /ˈɔrɪndʒ/  
Poland n /ˈpɔʊlənd/  
postcard n /ˈpɑʊskɑrd/  
Russia n /ˈrʌʃə/  
See you v /siːju/  
sister n /ˈsɪster/  
Spain n /ˈspæn/  
spelling v /ˈspɛl/  
stamp v /stæmp/  
student n /ˈstjuːdnt/  
teacher n /ˈtiːtʃə/  
telephone number n /ˈtɛləfən ˌnʌmba/  
music n /ˈmjuːzɪk/  
thank you /ˈθæŋk juː/  
thanks /θæŋks/  
the USA n /ˈdɑː juː esˈeɪ/  
this (book) n /ðɪs/  
ticket n /ˈtɪktɪk/  
very well adj /ˈveri ˈwel/  
want v /wɒnt/  
what adv /wɒt/  
where adv /wɛðə/  
your pron /jɔr/  
UNIT 2

accountant n /ˈkɑːntənt/  
actor n /ˈæktr/  
address n /əˈdres/  
age n /ˈeɪdʒ/  
American adj /ˈeɪmrɪkən/  
anything else /ˈentʃɪŋ ˈels/  
apple pie n /ˈæpl ˈpaɪ/  
at home adv /ət həʊm/  
at work adv /ət wɜːk/  
aunt n /ˈɔnt/  
bar n /bɑːr/  
big adj /bɪg/  
boyfriend n /ˈbɔɪfrɛnd/  
cafe n /ˈkæf/  
cake n /keɪk/  
Can I have …? /kæn ɪ ˈheɪv/  
Can I help? /kæn ɪ ˈhelp/  
centre n /ˈsɛntər/  
cheap adj /tʃiːp/  
chicken n /ˈtʃɪkən/  
chips n pl /ˈtʃɪps/  
chocolate n /ˈtʃɒklət/  
classroom n /ˈklaːsˌrʊm/  
coffee n /ˈkɒfɪ/  
cold adj /kəld/  
daughter n /ˈdɔːtər/  
different adj /ˈdɪfrənt/  
difficult adj /ˈdɪfɪkəlt/  
drink v /drɪŋk/  
easy adj /ˈiːzi/  
egg n /ɛg/  
email n /ˈemɔɪl/  
exciting adj /ˈɪkˈsætɪŋ/  
expensive adj /ˈɛkspensɪv/  
family n /ˈfæməli/  
fast adj /fæst/  
father n /ˈfɑːðər/  
first name n /ˈfɜːst nɛm/  
fish n /fɪʃ/  
friendly adj /ˈfrendli/  
funny adj /ˈfʌni/  
girlfriend n /ˈɡɜːrlfrɛnd/  
good adj /ɡʊd/  
grandfather n /ˈɡrændfɑːðər/  
grandmother n /ˈɡrænmɑːθər/  
hamburger n /ˈhæmbɜːrɡər/  
happy adj /ˈhæpi/  
here adv /hɪr/  
how old? adv /hao ˈɔːl/  
husband n /ˈhʌzbɔnd/  
how old? adv /ˈhʌzbɔnd/  
how much? adv /ˈhʌzbɔnd/  
ice-cream n /ˈaɪsˌkriːm/  
Ireland n /ˈaɪrəld/  
journalist n /ˈdʒɜːrənɪst/  
love n /ˈlaʊv/  
lovely adj /ˈlʌvlɪ/  
menu n /ˈmɛnjuː/  
mineral water n /ˈmɪnərəl ˈwɔːtə/  
Monday n /ˈmændri/  
morning n /ˈmɔrɪŋ/  
mother n /ˈmʌðər/  
neat adj /nεt/  
new adj /ˈnuː/  
nightclub n /ˈnaɪkləb/  
now adv /nɔw/  
nurse n /nɜːs/  
old adj /əld/  
orange juice n /ˈɔrɪndʒ dʒuːz/  
photo n /ˈfəʊtəʊ/  
pizza n /ˈpiːtsə/  
please /ˈplɪz/  
Poland n /ˈpɔlənd/  
pound n /ˈpaʊnd/  
practice n /ˈpræktɪs/  
price n /ˈpraɪs/  
restaurant n /ˈrestɔrnt/  
salad n /ˈsæləd/  
sea n /siː/  
slow adj /ˈsləʊ/  
small adj /ˈsmɔːl/  
software designer n /ˈsɔtweɪ dəˈziːnaɪər/  
son n /sɔn/  
soon adv /ˈsʊn/  
speak v /spik/  
surname n /ˈsʊnˈnɛm/  
Switzerland n /ˈswɪtsərˌdæm/  
tea n /tiː/  
town n /tɔːn/  
tuna n /ˈtjuːnə/  
uncle n /ˈʌŋkl/  
understand v /ˈʌndərˈstånd/  
university n /ˌjuːnɪˈvɜːsəti/  
who? pron /hu/  
wife n /waɪf/  
write v /raɪt/  
young adj /ˈjʌŋ/
like v /lait/  
listen v /'lɪsən/  
live v /lɪv/  
look after v /lʊk 'ɔːftə/  
make v /mɛk/  
man n /mæn/  
Mexico n /'meksɪkəʊ/  
model n /ˈmɒdl/  
music n /ˈmjuːziʃən/  
never adv neva/  
never mind neva mənd/  
non-stop adv /'nɑːn stɑːp/  
of course ov 'kɔːs/  
office n /'ɒfɪs/  
only adv /'ɒnli/  
ordinary adj /'ɔːdərri/  
people n pl /piːpl/  
perhaps adv paˈhɛprs/  
petrol n /'pɛtrol/  
pianist n /ˈpiənɪst/  
pilot n /ˈpələt/  
plane n /plɛn/  
play v /plei/  
policeman n /'pɔliːsmən/  
post n /pəʊst/  
potato n /ˈpɒtəʊ/  
pudding n /ˈpuːdɪŋ/  
radio n /rəˈdeɪəʊ/  
relax v /rɪˈleks/  
riding v /rʌɪdɪŋ/  
school n /skuːl/  
Scotland n /'skɔːtʃlənd/  
sell v /sɛl/  
serve v /sɜːv/  
shop n /ʃɔp/  
shop assistant n /ʃɔp əˈsɪstənt/  
sick adj /sɪk/  
singer n /ˈsɪŋə/  
sit down v /sɪt 'dɑːn/  
small adj /smɔːl/  
Somali adj /'sɔməli/  
Somalia n /'sɔməliə/  
Spanish adj /ˈspænɪʃ/  
summer n /ˈsʌmər/  
supper n /ˈsʌpər/  
taxi driver n /'teksi 'driːvə/  
television n /ˈtɛlɪvɪʒən/  
tennis n /ˈtɛniːs/  
That's right! /daɪət 'rʌt/  
then adv /ðen/  
there adv /ðeə/  
things n /ˈθɪŋz/  
tired adj /ˈtaɪərd/  
too adv /tʊ/  
tourist n /ˈtʊərɪst/  
tourist guide n /ˈtʊərɪst ˈɡeid/  
tourist office n /ˈtʊərɪst ˈɒfɪs/  
undertaker n /ˌʌndərˈteɪkər/  
vanilla adj /ˈvæniələ/  
vegetarian food n /ˌvegəˈtrɪəriən/  
walk n, v /wɔːk/  
watch n, v /wɒtʃ/  
wear v /wɛə/  
week n /wiːk/  
weekday n /ˈweɪkdeɪ/  
west n /west/  
wine n /ˈwaɪn/  
work v /wɜːk/  
world n /ˈwɜːld/  

UNIT 4

a lot pron /əˈlɔt/  
after adv /'aftə/  
alcohol n /ˈælkəhol/  
always adv /ɔlˈweɪz/  
autumn n /ˈɔːtəm/  
bad adj /bæd/  
beach n /biːtʃ/  
best adj /best/  
boyfriend n /ˈbɔɪfrɛnd/  
bus n /bʌs/  
car n /kɑː/  
Christmas n /ˈkrɪsməs/  
club n /klʌb/  
coach trip n /ˈkoʊtʃ ˈtrɪp/  
colour n /ˈkʌlər/  
computer n /ˈkəm pjuːtər/  
computer game n /ˈkəm pjuːtər ˈɡeɪm/  
cool adj /kuːl/  
cooking n /ˈkʊkɪŋ/  
cousin n /ˈkʌzn/  
dance v /dɑːns/  
dancing n /ˈdɑːnsɪŋ/  
daylight n /ˈdæltəm/  
deposit n /ˈdɛpɔzɪt/  
dinner n /ˈdɪnər/  
do v /dʌ/  
don't worry v /dəʊnt 'wʌri/  
drink n /drɪŋk/  
DVD n /dɪd ˈvɪdɪə/  
England n /ˈɛŋɡəld/  
England family n /ˈɛŋɡəld ˈfiːməli/  
fast adj /fɑːst/  
fast food n /fɑːst ˈfud/  
favourite adj /ˈfɪvərət/  
festival n /ˈfɛstɪvl/  
flower n /ˈflɔːr/  
garden n /ˈɡɑːdn/  
go out v /gəʊ ˈaʊt/  
go running v /gəʊ ˈrəʊnɪŋ/  
gym n /dʒɪm/  
hard adv /hɑːd/  
here adv /hɪər/  
hot adj /hɔt/  
how? adv /hɑː/  
I'm sorry /aɪr ˈsɔrɪ/  
interested adj /ˈɪntərəstid/  
It doesn't matter /ɪt ˈdʒɑːnt ˈmætə/  
jobe n /ˈdʒɔʊk/  
leisure activity n /ˌlɪzəˈæktɪvəti/  
long adj /lɔŋ/  
long lunchtime n /ˈlɔŋlʌntʃtai̇m/  
match n /mætʃ/  
mountain n /ˈmaʊntən/  
never adv /ˈnɪvər/  
next adj /ˈnekst/  
nice adj /naɪs/  
north n /nɔːθ/  
Norway n /ˈnɔːrweɪ/  
often adv /ˈɒfn/  
oil adv /ˈaɪl/  
oh dear /əʊ ˈdiə/  
open v /ˈəʊpən/  
orange n /ˈɔrɪndʒ/  
pardon? /ˈpɑrdən/  
park n /pɑːk/  
parents n pl /ˈpeərənts/  
pink adj /ˈpɪŋk/  
Portuguese adj /ˈpɔrtjuˈɡɛz/  
rainy adj /ˈreɪni/  
reading n /ˈriːdɪŋ/  
reality /ˈrɛələti/  
red adj /red/  
rugby n /ˈrʌgbi/  
running n /ˈrʌnɪŋ/  
sailing n /ˈseɪlɪŋ/  
season n /ˈsiːzn/  
skating n /ˈskætiŋ/  
smoke v /ˈsmɔʊk/  
sometimes adv /ˈsʌmtaɪmz/  
south n /sɔːθ/  
special adj /ˈspeʃəl/  
spend v /spend/  
sport n /spɔrt/  
spring n /ˈspring/  
start v /start/  
still adv /stɪl/  
sunbathing n /ˈsʌnbeɪtɪŋ/  
sunny adj /ˈsʌnɪ/  
surfing n /ˈsɜːfɪŋ/  
swimming pool n /ˈswɪmɪŋ puːl/  
take v /teɪk/  
take photos v /teɪk ˈfəʊtəʊz/  
team n /tiːm/  
Thailand n /ˈθɔːldənd/  
ticket n /ˈtɪkɪt/  
That's OK /ðəts əʊ/  
trip n /trɪp/  
traffic n /ˈtrefɪk/  
train v /trɛɪn/  
travel v /trəˈvel/  
tropical adj /ˈtropɪkl/  
usually adv /ˈjuːʒuəl/  
visit v /ˈvɪzɪt/  
warmed adj /ˈwɔːmd/  
waterskiing n /ˈwɔtəskiŋ/  
water sports n /ˈwɔtə sports/  
weekend n /ˈwɪkend/  
What does ... mean? /wɒt dəz ... miːn/  
what time? /wɒt ˈtaɪm/  
what? /wɒt/  
when? /weɪn/  
where? /weə/  
white adj /waɪt/  
why? /waɪ/  
win v /wɪn/  
window n /ˈwɪndəʊ/  
windshielding n /ˈwɪndˌʃɜːl/  
winter n /ˈwɪntər/  
work n /wɜːk/  
year n /ˈjɑː/
address book n /ˈaдрес ˈbук/ agree v /əˈɡriː/ all the time /ɔːl ˈtaɪm/ best adj /ˈbɛst/ block n /ˈbloʊk/ book n /ˈbʊk/ bookshelf n /ˈbʊkʃɛlf/ bookshop n /ˈbʊkʃɔp/ both pron /ˈboθ/ bread n /ˈbred/ briefcase n /ˈbriːflɛs/ bubble n /ˈbʌbl/ bus stop n /ˈbʌs ˈstɑːp/ bus ticket n /ˈbʌsˈtɪkt/ car park n /ˈkɑːpɑːk/ cat n /ˈkæt/ champagne n /ˈʃæmpɪn/ Cheers! /ˈʃoʊz/ chemist's n /ˈkɛmɪsts/ Chinese adj /ˈtʃaɪnɪz/ church n /ˈtʃɜːrSizePolicy: /ˈkəlzɪˈfaɪ/ cinema n /ˈsɪmənə/ clock n /ˈklɒk/ collect v /kəˈlekt/ comfortable adj /ˈkʌmfortəbl/ completely adv /ˈkɒmplɪˈteɪt/ computer n /ˈkɒmpjuːtər/ cooker n /ˈkʊkə/ corner n /ˈkɔːrner/ cup n /kʌp/ cupboard n /ˈkʌbəd/ curtains n /ˈkærtnz/ designer n /ˈdɪzənər/ dining room n /ˈdɪnɪŋ ˈroʊm/ dirty adj /ˈdərti/ dog n /dɒɡ/ DVD player n /ˌdɛvɪdˈplɪə/ especially adv /ˈeɪspeʃəl/ everything pron /ˈɛveryθɪŋ/ exactly adv /ˈɪɡzæktli/ eyes n /aɪz/ far adv /fər/ fireplace n /ˈfaɪəplɛɪs/ flat n /flæt/ floor n /flɔːr/ fork n /fɔːk/ fridge n /frɪdʒ/ front door n /ˈfrʌnt ˈdrɔːr/ furniture n /ˈfɜːnɪtʃər/ future n /ˈfjuːtʃər/ garden n /ˈgɑːrn/ glass n /ˈɡlɑːs/ home n /həʊm/ how many? /hauˈmeni/ idea n /aɪˈdiə/ in front of prep /ɪn ˈfrɔnt əv/ Internet café n /ˌɪntəˈrɔːtə/ just (= only) adv /dʒʌst/ kitchen n /ˈkɪtʃən/ knife n /naiʃ/ lamp n /læmp/ left adv (opp right) /ˈlɛft/ living room n /ˈlɪvɪŋ ˈroʊm/ lots (of books) /lɒts/ mirror n /ˈmaɪrər/ mobile n /ˈməʊbaɪl/ modern adj /ˈmɒdən/ most of the time /ˈmaʊst əv ˈtaɪm/ music shop n /ˈmjʊzɪk ʃɔp/ natural adj /ˈnætʃrəl/ next to prep /ˈnekst tuː/ not a lot adv /nət ə lət/ notebook n /ˈnəʊtbʊk/ on prep /ən/ over /ˈəʊvərə/ park n /pɑːk/ pen n /pen/ perfect adj /ˈpɜːfɪkt/ picture n /ˈpɪktʃər/ plant n /ˈplant/ plate n /ˈpleɪt/ post box n /ˈpəʊst bɑːks/ radio n /ˈreɪdiəʊ/ railway station n /ˈreɪlweɪ ˈstæʃən/ reasons n /reɪˈzɔːnz/ record n /rɪˈkɔrd/ room n /rʊm/ round adj /raʊnd/ route n /rʊt/ rug n /rʌg/ sandwich n /ˈsænwɪdʃ/ shelf n /ʃelf/ sleep v /slɛp/ sofa n /ˈsəʊfa/ some /sʌm/ spoon n /spɔːn/ stamps n /stæmpz/ stop (bus) n /stɑːp/ stereo n /ˈstɛriəʊ/ sunny adj /ˈsʌnɪ/ supermarket n /ˈsjuːpəˈmaːrkɛt/ table n /ˈteɪbl/ tall adj /ˈtɔːl/ Thanks a lot /θæŋks a ˈlɔt/ telephone n /ˈteləfoʊn/ television n /ˈteɪlɪvɪʃn/ think v /θɪŋk/ under prep /ˈʌndər/ upstairs adv /ˈɔːpstrəʊz/ verandah n /vərəˈændə/ visitors n /ˈvɪzɪtəz/ wall n /wɔːl/ washing machine n /ˈwɒʃɪŋ ˈmæʃən/ window n /ˈwɪndəʊ/
meat n /miːt/  
menu n /ˈmenjuː/  
(the) Middle East n /ˈmɪdl ˈlist/  
milk n /milk/  
move on v /ˈmu:v ˈon/  
mushroom n /ˈmʌʃəm/  
noodles n /ˈnuːdəlz/  
north n /nɔːθ/  
orange n /ˈɔrɪndʒ/  
part (of the world) n /pɑːt/  
pass (= give) v /pɑːs/  
pasta n /ˈpɛstə/  
pea n /piː/  
peanut n /ˈpjuːtn/  
recipe n /ˈresipi/  
rice n /raɪs/  
right now adv /raɪt ˈnɔɪ/  
salt n /sɔːlt/, /sɔːlt/  
sardine n /ˈsɑːrdɪn/  
sausages n pl /ˈsoʊsɪz/  
Swedish adj /ˈskɛndərˌnɪvɪn/  
shopping list n /ˈʃɔːplɪst/  
single room n /ˈsɪŋgl ˈrʊm/  
small n /ˈsɔːm/  
sparkling water n /ˈspɑːklɪŋ ˈwɔːtər/  
still water n /ˈstɪl ˈwɔːtər/  
strawberry n /ˈstrɔːbərəri/  
sugar n /ˈʃʊɡər/  
table n /ˈteɪbəl/  
tea n /teə/  
toast n /ˈtoʊst/  
together adv /ˈtoʊˈgeðər/  
tomato n /ˈtəmətəʊ/  
trainers n pl /ˈtreɪnərz/  
transport v /ˈtrænspɔːrt/  
typical adj /ˈtɪpɪkl/  
vegetable n /vektəˈbɛl/  
washing-up n /ˈwɒʃɪŋ ˈʌp/  
yogurt n /ˈjɔːɡərt/  
young faithfully adv /ˈpɒjntɪfli/  
yourself adj /ˈjɔːz ˈfɛɪtlɪ/  

air n /eər/  
Arab n /ˈærəb/  
bank (of the river) n /ˈbæŋk/  
birthplace n /ˈbɜːθpliəs/  
bridge n /ˈbrɪdʒ/  
building n /ˈbʊldɪŋ/  
business adj /ˈbaɪzɪs/  
capital city n /ˌkæpɪtl ˈsɪti/  
car park n /ˈkɑːr ˈpɑːk/  
cathedral n /ˈkæθədral/  
centre n (in) /ˈsentr/  
clean adj /ˈklin/  
coast n /ˈkɔʊst/  
commercial adj /ˈkɒmərəs/  
compositor n /ˈkɒmɪsər/  
concert n /ˈkɒnsərt/  
cosmopolitan adj /ˌkɒzməlˈpɒlɪtən/  
cottage n /ˈkɒtɪdʒ/  
country (not the city) n /ˈkʌntri/  
corn n /ˈkɔːrn/  
cultural centre n /ˈkʌltʃərəl ˈsɜːntə/  
dirty adj /ˈdɑːtɪ/  
district n /ˈdɪstrɪkt/  
exhibition n /ˌɛkˈstʃɪbɪʃn/  
expensive adj /ɪkˈspensɪv/  
factory n /ˈfæktərɪ/  
field n /fiːld/  
festa n /ˈfestə/  
group n /grʊp/  
gypsey n /ˈdʒɪpsey/  
hand clapping n /ˈhænd ˌkliːpn/  
hill n /hɪl/  
historical adj /ˈhɪstərɪkl/  
immigrant n /ɪmˈmɪgrant/  
immigration n /ɪmˈmɪgrantʃən/  
indigenous adj /ɪnˈdɪgenəs/  
influential adj /ɪnˈfluənsɪfl/  
intelligent adj /ɪntəˈlɪgend/  
Latin adj /ˈleɪtn/  
library n /ˈlaɪbrəri/  
mixture n /ˈmɪkstʃər/  
mountain n /ˈmaʊntn/  
mud n /mʌd/  
museum n /ˈmjuːzɪəm/  
noisy adj /ˈnoɪzi/  
off prep /əf/  
open prep /ˈoʊpən/  
park n /pɑːk/  
past prep /ˈpɑːst/  
population n /ˈpɒpjəˌləʃn/  
port n /pɔːt/  
practise v /ˈpræktɪs/  
pretty adj /ˈprɛtti/  
quiet adj /ˈkwɔːtər/  
resort n /ˈrɛzər/  
river n /ˈrɪvər/  
rule v /rʊl/  
safe adj /seɪf/  
sail v /seɪl/  
salsa n /ˈsɑːlsə/  
second adj /ˈsɛkənd/  
ship n /ʃɪp/  
slave n /ˈslɛv/
## Irregular verbs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Base form</th>
<th>Past Simple</th>
<th>Past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>be</td>
<td>was/were</td>
<td>been</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>become</td>
<td>became</td>
<td>become</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>begin</td>
<td>began</td>
<td>begun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>break</td>
<td>broke</td>
<td>broken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bring</td>
<td>brought</td>
<td>brought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>build</td>
<td>built</td>
<td>built</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>buy</td>
<td>bought</td>
<td>bought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>can</td>
<td>could</td>
<td>been able</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>catch</td>
<td>caught</td>
<td>caught</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>choose</td>
<td>chose</td>
<td>chosen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come</td>
<td>came</td>
<td>come</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cost</td>
<td>cost</td>
<td>cost</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cut</td>
<td>cut</td>
<td>cut</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do</td>
<td>did</td>
<td>done</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drink</td>
<td>drank</td>
<td>drunk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drive</td>
<td>drove</td>
<td>driven</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eat</td>
<td>ate</td>
<td>eaten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fall</td>
<td>fell</td>
<td>fallen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>feel</td>
<td>felt</td>
<td>felt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fight</td>
<td>fought</td>
<td>fought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>find</td>
<td>found</td>
<td>found</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fly</td>
<td>flew</td>
<td>flown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forget</td>
<td>forgot</td>
<td>forgotten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get</td>
<td>got</td>
<td>got</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>give</td>
<td>gave</td>
<td>given</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go</td>
<td>went</td>
<td>gone/been</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grow</td>
<td>grew</td>
<td>grown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have</td>
<td>had</td>
<td>had</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hear</td>
<td>heard</td>
<td>heard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hit</td>
<td>hit</td>
<td>hit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>keep</td>
<td>kept</td>
<td>kept</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>know</td>
<td>knew</td>
<td>known</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>learn</td>
<td>learnt/learned</td>
<td>learnt/learned</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leave</td>
<td>left</td>
<td>left</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lose</td>
<td>lost</td>
<td>lost</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>make</td>
<td>made</td>
<td>made</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>meet</td>
<td>met</td>
<td>met</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pay</td>
<td>paid</td>
<td>paid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put</td>
<td>put</td>
<td>put</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>read /red/</td>
<td>read /red/</td>
<td>read /red/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ride</td>
<td>rode</td>
<td>ridden</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>run</td>
<td>ran</td>
<td>run</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>say</td>
<td>said</td>
<td>said</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>see</td>
<td>saw</td>
<td>seen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sell</td>
<td>sold</td>
<td>sold</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>send</td>
<td>sent</td>
<td>sent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shut</td>
<td>shut</td>
<td>shut</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sing</td>
<td>sang</td>
<td>sung</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sit</td>
<td>sat</td>
<td>sat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sleep</td>
<td>slept</td>
<td>slept</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>speak</td>
<td>spoke</td>
<td>spoken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spend</td>
<td>spent</td>
<td>spent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stand</td>
<td>stood</td>
<td>stood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>steal</td>
<td>stole</td>
<td>stolen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>swim</td>
<td>swam</td>
<td>swum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take</td>
<td>took</td>
<td>taken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tell</td>
<td>told</td>
<td>told</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>think</td>
<td>thought</td>
<td>thought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>understand</td>
<td>understood</td>
<td>understood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wake</td>
<td>woke</td>
<td>woken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wear</td>
<td>wore</td>
<td>worn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>win</td>
<td>won</td>
<td>won</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>write</td>
<td>wrote</td>
<td>written</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Verb patterns

### Verb + -ing

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb + -ing</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>like</td>
<td>swimming</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>love</td>
<td>cooking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enjoy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hate</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>finish</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stop</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Verb + to + infinitive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb + to + infinitive</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>choose</td>
<td>to go</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>decide</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forget</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>promise</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>need</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>help</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hope</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>try</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>want</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>would like</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>would love</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Verb + -ing or to + infinitive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb + -ing or to + infinitive</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>begin</td>
<td>raining/to rain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>start</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Modal auxiliary verbs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Modal auxiliary verbs</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>can</td>
<td>go</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>could</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shall</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>will</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>would</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arrive</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# Phonetic symbols

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Consonants</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 /p/</td>
<td>as in pen /pen/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 /b/</td>
<td>as in big /bɪɡ/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 /t/</td>
<td>as in tea /ti:/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 /d/</td>
<td>as in do /du:/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 /k/</td>
<td>as in cat /kæt/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 /ɡ/</td>
<td>as in go /ɡəʊ/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 /f/</td>
<td>as in four /fɔː/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 /v/</td>
<td>as in very /ˈveri/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9 /s/</td>
<td>as in son /sɔn/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 /z/</td>
<td>as in zoo /zuː/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11 /l/</td>
<td>as in live /lɪv/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12 /m/</td>
<td>as in my /maɪ/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13 /n/</td>
<td>as in near /nɪər/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14 /h/</td>
<td>as in happy /ˈheɪpi/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15 /r/</td>
<td>as in red /red/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16 /j/</td>
<td>as in yes /jes/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17 /w/</td>
<td>as in want /wɒnt/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18 /θ/</td>
<td>as in thanks /θæŋks/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19 /ð/</td>
<td>as in the /ði/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20 /ʃ/</td>
<td>as in she /ʃi:/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21 /z/</td>
<td>as in television /ˈtelɪvɪʒən/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22 /ʃ/</td>
<td>as in child /ʃaɪld/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23 /dʒ/</td>
<td>as in German /dʒɜːmən/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24 /ŋ/</td>
<td>as in English /ˈɛŋglɪʃ/</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vowels</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>25 /iː/</td>
<td>as in see /siː/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26 /ɪ/</td>
<td>as in his /hɪz/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27 /ɪ/</td>
<td>as in twenty /ˈtwentɪ/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28 /e/</td>
<td>as in ten /tɛn/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29 /æ/</td>
<td>as in stamp /stæmp/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30 /ɑ:/</td>
<td>as in father /ˈfaːðə/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31 /ɒ/</td>
<td>as in hot /hɒt/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32 /ɔ:/</td>
<td>as in morning /ˈmɔːnɪŋ/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33 /ə/</td>
<td>as in football /ˈfʊtbɔːl/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34 /uː/</td>
<td>as in you /juː/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35 /ʌ/</td>
<td>as in sun /sʌn/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36 /ə/</td>
<td>as in learn /laːn/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37 /ɔ/</td>
<td>as in letter /ˈletər/</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Diphthongs (two vowels together)</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>38 /eɪ/</td>
<td>as in name /neɪm/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39 /əʊ/</td>
<td>as in no /nəʊ/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40 /aʊ/</td>
<td>as in my /maɪ/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41 /aʊ/</td>
<td>as in how /haʊ/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42 /ɔɪ/</td>
<td>as in boy /boɪ/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43 /aɪ/</td>
<td>as in hear /hɪər/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44 /eɪ/</td>
<td>as in where /weər/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45 /oʊ/</td>
<td>as in tour /toʊ/</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Teachers around the world comment on the THIRD edition of New Headway Elementary . . .

'An inspiring and well-written book that perfectly suits the needs of both teachers and students.'

'An international approach reflecting the global village.'

'...more action, more colour...in good accordance with today's accelerated world.'

the THIRD edition

New Headway Elementary

The world’s most trusted English course

New Headway is the course teachers and learners can rely on. Why? An authoritative integrated syllabus, motivating topics, and clearly focused tasks combine with a real understanding of what works in the classroom. It all makes for effective teaching and effective learning. Tried and tested all over the world, it’s probably the most popular course ever written.

What’s different about the THIRD edition of New Headway Elementary?

NEW Up-to-date texts and topics
NEW Integrated writing syllabus and pairwork activities
NEW Music of English boxes focus on stress and intonation in Everyday English
NEW Integrated practice exercises in the Grammar Reference
NEW Fresh, new design

'...attractive, well-organised, and easy to use.'

PLUS
- Class CDs/cassettes
- Workbook (with or without key)
- Student's Workbook CD/cassette
- Interactive Practice CD-ROM with video excerpts
- Free-standing pronunciation course with CD/cassette
- DVD/Video with student's activity book
- Headway online: interactive exercises available at www.oup.com/elt/headway

Liz and John Soars are internationally renowned authors, and highly experienced teachers and teacher trainers.

OXFORD UNIVERSITY PRESS

www.oup.com/elt